



# Hebrews

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## **Table of Contents**

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>14</b>
Introduction to Hebrews . . . . .	14
Hebrews 1 General Notes . . . . .	28
Hebrews 1:1-3 . . . . .	29
Hebrews 1:4-5 . . . . .	31
Hebrews 1:6-7 . . . . .	33
Hebrews 1:8-9 . . . . .	35
Hebrews 1:10-12 . . . . .	37
Hebrews 1:13-14 . . . . .	39
Hebrews 2 General Notes . . . . .	41
Hebrews 2:1 . . . . .	42
Hebrews 2:2-4 . . . . .	43
Hebrews 2:5-6 . . . . .	45
Hebrews 2:7-8 . . . . .	47
Hebrews 2:9-10 . . . . .	49
Hebrews 2:11-12 . . . . .	51
Hebrews 2:13-15 . . . . .	53
Hebrews 2:16-18 . . . . .	55
Hebrews 3 General Notes . . . . .	57
Hebrews 3:1-4 . . . . .	58
Hebrews 3:5-6 . . . . .	60
Hebrews 3:7-8 . . . . .	62
Hebrews 3:9-11 . . . . .	64
Hebrews 3:12-13 . . . . .	66
Hebrews 3:14-15 . . . . .	68
Hebrews 3:16-19 . . . . .	70
Hebrews 4 General Notes . . . . .	72
Hebrews 4:1-2 . . . . .	73
Hebrews 4:3-5 . . . . .	75
Hebrews 4:6-7 . . . . .	77
Hebrews 4:8-11 . . . . .	79
Hebrews 4:12-13 . . . . .	81
Hebrews 4:14-16 . . . . .	83
Hebrews 5 General Notes . . . . .	85
Hebrews 5:1-3 . . . . .	86
Hebrews 5:4-5 . . . . .	88
Hebrews 5:6 . . . . .	90
Hebrews 5:7-8 . . . . .	91
Hebrews 5:9-11 . . . . .	93
Hebrews 5:12-14 . . . . .	95

*Table of Contents*

---

Hebrews 6 General Notes . . . . .	97
Hebrews 6:1-3 . . . . .	98
Hebrews 6:4-6 . . . . .	100
Hebrews 6:7-8 . . . . .	102
Hebrews 6:9-10 . . . . .	104
Hebrews 6:11-12 . . . . .	106
Hebrews 6:13-15 . . . . .	107
Hebrews 6:16-18 . . . . .	108
Hebrews 6:19-20 . . . . .	110
Hebrews 7 General Notes . . . . .	112
Hebrews 7:1-3 . . . . .	113
Hebrews 7:4-6 . . . . .	115
Hebrews 7:7-10 . . . . .	117
Hebrews 7:11-12 . . . . .	119
Hebrews 7:13-14 . . . . .	121
Hebrews 7:15-17 . . . . .	122
Hebrews 7:18-19 . . . . .	124
Hebrews 7:20-21 . . . . .	125
Hebrews 7:22-24 . . . . .	127
Hebrews 7:25-26 . . . . .	129
Hebrews 7:27-28 . . . . .	130
Hebrews 8 General Notes . . . . .	132
Hebrews 8:1-2 . . . . .	133
Hebrews 8:3-5 . . . . .	135
Hebrews 8:6-7 . . . . .	137
Hebrews 8:8-9 . . . . .	139
Hebrews 8:10 . . . . .	141
Hebrews 8:11-12 . . . . .	143
Hebrews 8:13 . . . . .	145
Hebrews 9 General Notes . . . . .	146
Hebrews 9:1-2 . . . . .	147
Hebrews 9:3-5 . . . . .	149
Hebrews 9:6-7 . . . . .	151
Hebrews 9:8-10 . . . . .	152
Hebrews 9:11-12 . . . . .	154
Hebrews 9:13-15 . . . . .	156
Hebrews 9:16-17 . . . . .	158
Hebrews 9:18-20 . . . . .	159
Hebrews 9:21-22 . . . . .	161
Hebrews 9:23-24 . . . . .	163
Hebrews 9:25-26 . . . . .	165
Hebrews 9:27-28 . . . . .	167
Hebrews 10 General Notes . . . . .	168

Hebrews 10:1-4 . . . . .	169
Hebrews 10:5-7 . . . . .	171
Hebrews 10:8-10 . . . . .	173
Hebrews 10:11-14 . . . . .	175
Hebrews 10:15-16 . . . . .	177
Hebrews 10:17-18 . . . . .	179
Hebrews 10:19-22 . . . . .	181
Hebrews 10:23-25 . . . . .	184
Hebrews 10:26-27 . . . . .	186
Hebrews 10:28-29 . . . . .	188
Hebrews 10:30-31 . . . . .	190
Hebrews 10:32-34 . . . . .	191
Hebrews 10:35-37 . . . . .	193
Hebrews 10:38-39 . . . . .	195
Hebrews 11 General Notes . . . . .	197
Hebrews 11:1-3 . . . . .	198
Hebrews 11:4 . . . . .	200
Hebrews 11:5-6 . . . . .	201
Hebrews 11:7 . . . . .	203
Hebrews 11:8-10 . . . . .	205
Hebrews 11:11-12 . . . . .	207
Hebrews 11:13-14 . . . . .	209
Hebrews 11:15-16 . . . . .	210
Hebrews 11:17-19 . . . . .	211
Hebrews 11:20-22 . . . . .	213
Hebrews 11:23-26 . . . . .	215
Hebrews 11:27-28 . . . . .	217
Hebrews 11:29-31 . . . . .	219
Hebrews 11:32-34 . . . . .	221
Hebrews 11:35-38 . . . . .	223
Hebrews 11:39-40 . . . . .	225
Hebrews 12 General Notes . . . . .	226
Hebrews 12:1-3 . . . . .	227
Hebrews 12:4-6 . . . . .	229
Hebrews 12:7-8 . . . . .	231
Hebrews 12:9-11 . . . . .	233
Hebrews 12:12-13 . . . . .	235
Hebrews 12:14-17 . . . . .	236
Hebrews 12:18-21 . . . . .	238
Hebrews 12:22-24 . . . . .	240
Hebrews 12:25-26 . . . . .	242
Hebrews 12:27-29 . . . . .	244
Hebrews 13 General Notes . . . . .	246

Table of Contents

---

Hebrews 13:1-2 . . . . .	247
Hebrews 13:3-4 . . . . .	248
Hebrews 13:5-6 . . . . .	250
Hebrews 13:7-8 . . . . .	252
Hebrews 13:9-11 . . . . .	253
Hebrews 13:12-14 . . . . .	255
Hebrews 13:15-17 . . . . .	257
Hebrews 13:18-19 . . . . .	259
Hebrews 13:20-21 . . . . .	260
Hebrews 13:22-23 . . . . .	262
Hebrews 13:24-25 . . . . .	263
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>264</b>
Hebrews 1 . . . . .	264
Hebrews 2 . . . . .	266
Hebrews 3 . . . . .	268
Hebrews 4 . . . . .	270
Hebrews 5 . . . . .	273
Hebrews 6 . . . . .	275
Hebrews 7 . . . . .	277
Hebrews 8 . . . . .	280
Hebrews 9 . . . . .	282
Hebrews 10 . . . . .	285
Hebrews 11 . . . . .	288
Hebrews 12 . . . . .	291
Hebrews 13 . . . . .	294
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>297</b>
Aaron . . . . .	297
Abel . . . . .	298
Abraham, Abram . . . . .	299
acknowledge . . . . .	300
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress . . . . .	301
adversary, enemy . . . . .	302
age . . . . .	303
altar . . . . .	304
altar of incense . . . . .	305
amen, truly . . . . .	306
angel, archangel . . . . .	307
angry, anger . . . . .	309
anoint, anointed . . . . .	310
apostle, apostleship . . . . .	311
appoint, appointed . . . . .	312
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh . . . . .	313
assembly, assemble . . . . .	314

astray, go astray, led astray, stray . . . . .	315
atonement lid . . . . .	316
avenge, revenge, vengeance . . . . .	317
awe, awesome . . . . .	318
baptize, baptism . . . . .	319
barren . . . . .	321
beg, beggar . . . . .	322
believe, believe in, belief . . . . .	323
believer . . . . .	324
beloved . . . . .	326
biblical time: day . . . . .	327
biblical time: month . . . . .	328
biblical time: year . . . . .	329
birthright . . . . .	330
blameless . . . . .	331
blemish . . . . .	332
bles, blessed, blessing . . . . .	333
blood . . . . .	335
bloodshed . . . . .	336
body . . . . .	337
bind, bond, bound . . . . .	338
bread . . . . .	340
brother . . . . .	341
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	342
Cain . . . . .	343
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	344
cherubim, cherub . . . . .	346
children, child . . . . .	347
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	348
clean, cleanse . . . . .	350
command, to command, commandment . . . . .	351
companion . . . . .	352
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	353
conceive, conception . . . . .	354
condemn, condemnation . . . . .	355
confess, confession . . . . .	356
confidence, confident . . . . .	357
confirm, confirmation . . . . .	358
conscience . . . . .	359
consume . . . . .	360
courage, courageous . . . . .	361
covenant . . . . .	362
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	364

*Table of Contents*

---

create, creation, Creator . . . . .	365
cross . . . . .	366
crown, to crown . . . . .	367
crucify . . . . .	368
curse, cursed . . . . .	369
curtain . . . . .	370
darkness . . . . .	371
David . . . . .	372
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh . . . . .	373
death, die, dead . . . . .	374
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . . .	376
descendant, descended from . . . . .	377
desert, wilderness . . . . .	378
destiny, destine, destined . . . . .	379
destroyer . . . . .	380
discipline, self-discipline . . . . .	381
disgrace, disgraceful . . . . .	382
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . . .	383
divine . . . . .	384
earth, earthly . . . . .	385
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	386
encourage, encouragement . . . . .	387
endure, endurance . . . . .	388
Enoch . . . . .	389
Esau . . . . .	390
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . . .	391
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	392
faith . . . . .	394
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	396
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	397
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	398
fire . . . . .	399
firstborn . . . . .	400
flesh . . . . .	401
footstool . . . . .	402
foreigner, foreign, alien . . . . .	403
forever . . . . .	404
forgive, forgiveness . . . . .	405
sexual immorality . . . . .	406
forsake, forsaken, forsook . . . . .	407
foundation, founded . . . . .	408
free, freedom, liberty . . . . .	409
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	410

gate, gate bar . . . . .	412
generation . . . . .	413
Gideon . . . . .	414
gift . . . . .	415
glory, glorious . . . . .	416
goat, kid . . . . .	417
God . . . . .	418
godly, godliness . . . . .	420
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father . . . . .	421
gold . . . . .	423
good, goodness . . . . .	424
good news, gospel . . . . .	426
grace, gracious . . . . .	428
groan . . . . .	429
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	430
hard, hardness, harden . . . . .	432
heal, cure . . . . .	433
heart . . . . .	434
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	435
heifer . . . . .	436
heir . . . . .	437
high priest . . . . .	438
holy, holiness . . . . .	440
holy place, most holy place . . . . .	441
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . . .	442
honor, to honor . . . . .	444
house . . . . .	445
household . . . . .	446
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	447
imitate, imitator . . . . .	448
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	449
iniquity . . . . .	451
instruct, instruction . . . . .	452
intercede, intercession . . . . .	453
Isaac . . . . .	454
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	455
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	456
Jephthah . . . . .	457
Jericho . . . . .	458
Jerusalem . . . . .	459
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus . . . . .	461
Joseph (OT) . . . . .	463
Joshua . . . . .	464

*Table of Contents*

---

joy, joyful . . . . .	465
Judah . . . . .	466
judge, judgment . . . . .	467
judge . . . . .	469
just, justice, justly . . . . .	470
kingdom . . . . .	471
king . . . . .	473
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	474
lampstand . . . . .	475
law, principle . . . . .	476
lawless, lawlessness . . . . .	477
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	478
Levite, Levi . . . . .	480
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	481
like, likeness . . . . .	483
lion . . . . .	484
Lord . . . . .	485
love . . . . .	486
majesty . . . . .	488
manna . . . . .	489
mediator . . . . .	490
Melchizedek . . . . .	491
mercy, merciful . . . . .	492
mighty, might . . . . .	494
mind . . . . .	495
minister, ministry . . . . .	496
miracle, wonder, sign . . . . .	497
mock, ridicule, scoff at . . . . .	499
Moses . . . . .	500
Most High . . . . .	501
name . . . . .	502
neighbor . . . . .	503
new covenant . . . . .	504
Noah . . . . .	506
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	507
obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	508
oil . . . . .	509
Passover . . . . .	510
patient, patience . . . . .	511
peace, peaceful . . . . .	512
people of God, my people . . . . .	513
perfect . . . . .	514
perish, perishing, perishable . . . . .	515

persecute, persecution . . . . .	516
Pharaoh, king of Egypt . . . . .	517
pierce . . . . .	518
possess, possession . . . . .	519
power, powers . . . . .	520
praise . . . . .	521
pray, prayer . . . . .	522
priest, priesthood . . . . .	523
prison, prisoner, imprison . . . . .	525
proclaim, proclamation . . . . .	526
promise . . . . .	527
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	528
prostitute, harlot, whore . . . . .	530
proud, pride, prideful . . . . .	531
punish, punishment . . . . .	532
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	534
quench . . . . .	535
Rahab . . . . .	536
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	537
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	539
receive . . . . .	540
redeem, redemption, redeemer . . . . .	541
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea . . . . .	542
reject . . . . .	543
repent, repentance . . . . .	544
rest . . . . .	545
resurrection . . . . .	546
reveal, revelation . . . . .	547
reverence . . . . .	548
reward . . . . .	549
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	550
right hand . . . . .	551
rod . . . . .	552
run, running . . . . .	553
Sabbath . . . . .	554
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	555
salvation . . . . .	557
Samson . . . . .	558
Samuel . . . . .	559
sanctify, sanctification . . . . .	560
sanctuary . . . . .	561
Sarah, Sarai . . . . .	562
save, safe . . . . .	563

*Table of Contents*

---

scepter . . . . .	565
scroll . . . . .	566
seed . . . . .	567
seek, sought . . . . .	568
seize . . . . .	569
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	570
serve, service . . . . .	572
set apart . . . . .	573
shadow . . . . .	574
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	575
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	576
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	577
sign, proof, reminder . . . . .	579
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	581
slaughter . . . . .	583
son, son of . . . . .	584
Son of God, the Son, Son . . . . .	586
Son of Man, son of man . . . . .	588
soul . . . . .	589
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	590
staff . . . . .	592
stone, stoning . . . . .	593
subject, be subject to, in subjection to . . . . .	594
submit, in submission . . . . .	595
suffer, suffering . . . . .	596
sword . . . . .	597
tabernacle . . . . .	598
teach, teaching, teacher, taught . . . . .	599
teacher, Teacher . . . . .	600
tempt, temptation . . . . .	601
tent . . . . .	602
tenth, tithe . . . . .	603
terror, terrify . . . . .	604
test . . . . .	605
testimony, testify . . . . .	606
thorn, thistle . . . . .	607
throne . . . . .	608
Timothy . . . . .	609
trample . . . . .	610
transgress, transgression . . . . .	611
tremble . . . . .	612
tribe . . . . .	613
true, truth, come true . . . . .	614

---

trumpet . . . . .	616
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	617
turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	618
unbeliever, unbelief . . . . .	619
unclean . . . . .	620
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness . . . . .	621
unholy . . . . .	622
unjust, unjustly, injustice . . . . .	623
unrighteous, unrighteousness . . . . .	624
voice . . . . .	625
walk . . . . .	626
watch, watchman . . . . .	627
water, waters . . . . .	628
will of God . . . . .	629
witness, eyewitness . . . . .	630
word . . . . .	632
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . . .	633
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	635
world, worldly . . . . .	636
worship . . . . .	637
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . . .	638
wrath, fury . . . . .	639
written . . . . .	640
Zion, Mount Zion . . . . .	641
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>642</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	642
Active or Passive . . . . .	645
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding . . . . .	648
Double Negatives . . . . .	650
Doublet . . . . .	653
Ellipsis . . . . .	655
Euphemism . . . . .	657
Exclusive “We” . . . . .	659
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	661
When Masculine Words Include Women . . . . .	663
Generic Noun Phrases . . . . .	665
Hyperbole . . . . .	667
Idiom . . . . .	670
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	672
Litotes . . . . .	674
Metaphor . . . . .	676
Metonymy . . . . .	681
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	683

*Table of Contents*

---

Parallelism . . . . .	685
Personification . . . . .	687
Pronouns . . . . .	689
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	691
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	693
Simile . . . . .	696
Synecdoche . . . . .	699
Forms of You . . . . .	701
Translating Son and Father . . . . .	702
Biblical Money . . . . .	704
How to Translate Names . . . . .	706
Numbers . . . . .	710
Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	713
Symbolic Action . . . . .	716
Textual Variants . . . . .	719
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	722
Connecting Words . . . . .	725
Quotations and Quote Margins . . . . .	728

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Hebrews

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of the Book of Hebrews

1. Jesus is superior to God's prophets and angels (1:1-4:13)
2. Jesus is superior to the priests who serve in the temple in Jerusalem (4:14-7:28)
3. Jesus' ministry is superior to the old covenant that God made with his people (8:1-10:39)
4. What faith is like (11:1-40)
5. Encouragement to be faithful to God (12:1-29)
6. Concluding encouragements and greetings (13:1-25)

##### What is the Book of Hebrews about?

In the Book of Hebrews, the author wanted to show that Jesus fulfilled several Old Testament prophecies. Jesus' role as the perfect High Priest is explained; the author did this in order to encourage the Jewish Christians and to explain that Jesus is better than anything that the old covenant had to offer. Hebrews shows how Jesus completed the law of Moses, so that animal sacrifices would from then on be useless. Jesus was the sacrifice for all sins, once and for all time. He is therefore the one to truly trust for access to God the Father.

##### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Hebrews." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "The Letter to the Hebrews," or "A Letter to the Jewish Christians." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

##### Who wrote the Book of Hebrews?

No one knows who wrote Hebrews, but scholars have made suggestions such as the Apostle Paul, Luke, or Barnabas. The date of writing is also not known, but most believe it was written not more than seventy years after the birth of Christ. Jerusalem was destroyed in A.D. 70, but the writer of this letter talks about Jerusalem as if it had not yet been destroyed.

#### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

##### Can readers understand this book without knowing about the sacrifices and the work of the priests required in the Old Testament?

It would be very difficult for readers to understand this book with understanding these matters. Translators might consider giving some explanations to this effect in notes or in an introduction to this book.

### How is the idea of blood used in the Book of Hebrews?

Beginning in 9:7, the idea of blood is often used as metonymy to stand for the death of any animal that was sacrificed to meet the requirements of God's covenant with Israel. The author also uses blood to stand for the death of Jesus Christ, who became the perfect sacrifice for the entire world's sins. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Beginning in 9:19, the author uses the idea of sprinkling as a symaction. It was by sprinkling blood that the priests applied the benefit of the animals' death to the Israelites and to objects that had to be made acceptable to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Part 3: Important Translation Issues

#### How are the ideas of "holy" and "sanctify" represented in Hebrews ULB?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, Hebrews ULB uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the context mainly indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULB uses "believer" or "believers." (See 6:10; 13:24)
- Sometimes the context mainly implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULB uses "set apart," "dedicated to," or "reserved for." (See 2:11; 9:13; 10:10, 14, 29; 13:12)

As translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions, they will often be helped by the choices made in the ULB.

#### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Hebrews?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of Hebrews:

- "and you have put him over the works of your hands." (2:7) The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions do not have this reading. Some older versions do.
- "those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed" (4:2). The ULB, UDB, and some other versions have this reading. Other versions read, "those who heard it without joining faith to it." If there are other versions in the region, translators might consider following their reading.
- "Christ came as a high priest of the good things that have come." (9:11) The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some other versions have, "Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come." If there are other versions in the region, translators might consider following their reading.
- "on those who were prisoners" (10:34). The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read, "of me in my chains."

- “They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword.” (11:37) The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have, “They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were tempted. They were killed with the sword.”
- “If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned.” (12:20) The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have, “If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

### List of translationAcademy Topics in Hebrews

- \* **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 01:01, 02:13, 03:01, 03:05, 03:07, 03:12, 03:14, 03:16, 05:09, 06:09, 07:22, 07:27, 09:01, 10:08, 10:17, 11:08, 11:23, 11:35, 12:07
- \* **Active or Passive** is found in: 01:10, 02:02, 02:09, 02:11, 02:16, 03:01, 03:05, 03:09, 03:12, 03:14, 04:01, 04:03, 04:06, 04:08, 04:12, 04:14, 05:01, 05:04, 05:07, 05:09, 06:07, 06:13, 06:16, 07:07, 07:11, 07:13, 07:20, 07:22, 07:27, 08:03, 08:06, 09:01, 09:06, 09:08, 09:11, 09:13, 09:18, 09:21, 09:23, 09:25, 09:27, 10:05, 10:08, 10:11, 10:19, 10:28, 10:32, 11:01, 11:04, 11:05, 11:07, 11:08, 11:15, 11:17, 11:23, 11:29, 11:32, 11:35, 11:39, 12:04, 12:14, 12:18, 12:22, 12:27, 13:03, 13:09, 13:18, 13:22
- \* **Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding** is found in: 07:04
- \* **Double Negatives** is found in: 02:07, 02:11, 04:01, 04:14, 06:09, 06:16, 09:06, 11:05, 12:14, 12:25
- \* **Doublet** is found in: 02:02, 04:12, 05:07, 06:19, 08:03, 08:11, 10:17, 11:13, 12:27
- \* **Ellipsis** is found in: 01:04, 05:06, 07:15, 12:14
- \* **Euphemism** is found in: 03:14, 11:20, 13:03
- \* **Exclusive “We”** is found in: 13:18
- \* **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 02:02, 02:11, 07:01, 07:20, 07:25, 08:03, 09:03, 09:21, 10:17, 10:23, 10:26, 10:28, 10:35, 11:01, 11:20, 11:27, 12:18, 12:25, 13:05
- \* **When Masculine Words Include Women** is found in: 02:09, 02:11, 12:04, 12:07, 13:22
- \* **Generic Noun Phrases** is found in: 02:07, 09:08, 10:38
- \* **Idiom** is found in: 02:13, 12:09
- \* **Inclusive “We”** is found in: 02:01, 03:14, 03:16, 07:15, 10:30, 12:01, 13:20
- \* **Litotes** is found in: 12:04, 13:01, 13:15
- \* **Metaphor** is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:06, 01:08, 01:10, 01:13, 02:01, 02:07, 02:09, 02:13, 02:16, 03:01, 03:05, 03:07, 03:09, 03:12, 03:14, 03:16, 04:01, 04:03, 04:06, 04:08, 04:12, 04:14, 05:01, 05:04, 05:07, 05:09, 05:12, 06:01, 06:04, 06:07, 06:11, 06:16, 06:19, 07:04, 07:07, 07:18, 07:25, 08:03, 08:08, 08:10, 09:08, 09:11, 09:13, 09:21, 09:25, 09:27, 10:01, 10:08, 10:11, 10:15, 10:19, 10:23, 10:26, 10:28, 10:30, 10:32, 10:35, 10:38, 11:04, 11:05, 11:07, 11:08, 11:13, 11:23, 11:32, 12:01, 12:04, 12:07, 12:09, 12:12, 12:14, 12:22, 12:25, 12:27, 13:09, 13:12, 13:15, 13:18, 13:20

- \* **Metonymy** is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:08, 01:10, 01:13, 02:02, 02:05, 02:11, 03:01, 03:05, 03:09, 04:12, 04:14, 05:04, 05:07, 05:12, 06:04, 06:09, 06:13, 07:15, 07:27, 08:01, 08:11, 09:03, 09:08, 09:13, 09:18, 09:21, 09:25, 09:27, 10:01, 10:11, 10:19, 10:28, 11:07, 11:08, 11:27, 11:35, 11:39, 12:01, 12:04, 12:09, 12:18, 12:22, 13:07, 13:09, 13:12, 13:15, 13:20, 13:22
- \* **Nominal Adjectives** is found in: 05:01
- \* **Parallelism** is found in: 01:04, 02:05, 05:04
- \* **Personification** is found in: 04:12, 06:07, 06:19, 07:15, 07:18, 11:29, 12:04, 12:09, 12:22
- \* **Pronouns** is found in: 05:09, 06:09, 06:11, 08:01, 09:03
- \* **Direct and Indirect Quotations** is found in: 08:11
- \* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:04, 01:13, 02:02, 02:05, 03:16, 07:11, 09:13, 10:01, 10:28, 11:32, 12:09, 13:05
- \* **Simile** is found in: 01:10, 11:11, 11:27, 12:07
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 09:11, 09:23
- \* **Forms of You** is found in: 03:09, 10:05, 12:25
- \* **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 03:05, 04:14, 05:04, 05:07, 06:04, 07:27, 10:28
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 07:01, 11:32, 13:24
- \* **Numbers** is found in: 03:09, 03:16, 11:29
- \* **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 04:03, 08:06, 09:03, 10:08
- \* **Symbolic Action** is found in: 09:18, 09:21, 10:19
- \* **Connecting Words** is found in: 12:27
- \* **Quotations and Quote Margins** is found in: 08:03

### List of translationWords in Hebrews

- \* **Aaron** is found in: 05:04, 07:11, 09:03
- \* **Abel** is found in: 11:04, 12:22
- \* **Abraham, Abram** is found in: 02:16, 06:13, 07:01, 07:07, 11:08, 11:11, 11:17
- \* **acknowledge** is found in: 13:15
- \* **adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress** is found in: 13:03
- \* **adversary, enemy** is found in: 10:11, 10:26
- \* **age** is found in: 06:04, 09:25
- \* **altar** is found in: 07:13, 13:09
- \* **altar of incense** is found in: 09:03

- \* amen, truly is found in: 13:20
- \* angel, archangel is found in: 01:04, 01:13, 02:02, 02:05, 12:22, 13:01
- \* angry, anger is found in: 03:09, 03:16, 11:27
- \* anoint, anointed is found in: 01:08
- \* apostle, apostleship is found in: 03:01
- \* ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 09:03
- \* assembly, assemble is found in: 02:11, 10:23
- \* astray, go astray, led astray, stray is found in: 03:09
- \* atonement lid is found in: 09:03
- \* avenge, revenge, vengeance is found in: 10:30
- \* awe, awesome is found in: 12:27
- \* baptize, baptism is found in: 06:01
- \* barren is found in: 11:11
- \* beg, beggar is found in: 12:18
- \* believe, believe in, belief is found in: 04:03, 04:14, 11:05
- \* believer is found in: 06:09, 13:24
- \* beloved is found in: 06:09
- \* biblical time: day is found in: 04:03, 08:08, 08:10, 10:32, 11:29
- \* biblical time: month is found in: 11:23
- \* biblical time: year is found in: 03:09, 03:16, 09:06, 09:25
- \* birthright is found in: 12:14
- \* blameless is found in: 07:25
- \* blemish is found in: 09:13
- \* bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 06:07, 06:13, 07:01, 07:07, 11:20, 12:14
- \* blood is found in: 02:13, 09:06, 09:11, 09:18, 09:21, 09:25, 10:01, 10:19, 10:28, 11:27, 12:04, 13:12, 13:20
- \* bloodshed is found in: 09:21
- \* body is found in: 10:05, 10:08
- \* bind, bond, bound is found in: 13:03
- \* bread is found in: 09:01
- \* brother is found in: 02:11, 03:01, 03:12, 08:11, 10:19, 13:01, 13:22
- \* burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 10:05, 10:08

- \* Cain is found in: 11:04
- \* call, calling, called, call out is found in: 03:01, 05:04, 09:13, 11:08
- \* cherubim, cherub is found in: 09:03
- \* children, child is found in: 11:20
- \* Christ, Messiah is found in: 03:05, 03:14, 05:04, 06:01, 08:03, 08:06, 09:11, 09:23, 09:27, 10:05, 10:11, 11:23
- \* clean, cleanse is found in: 01:01, 09:13, 09:21, 09:23, 10:01, 10:19
- \* command, to command, commandment is found in: 07:04, 07:18, 09:18, 11:01, 11:23, 12:18
- \* companion is found in: 01:08
- \* compassion, compassionate is found in: 10:32
- \* conceive, conception is found in: 11:11
- \* condemn, condemnation is found in: 11:07
- \* confess, confession is found in: 03:01, 10:23
- \* confidence, confident is found in: 03:05, 03:14, 04:14, 06:11, 06:16, 06:19, 07:18, 10:19, 10:23, 10:35, 11:01
- \* confirm, confirmation is found in: 02:02, 06:16
- \* conscience is found in: 09:08, 09:13, 10:19, 13:18
- \* consume is found in: 10:26, 12:27
- \* courage, courageous is found in: 13:05
- \* covenant is found in: 07:22, 08:06, 08:10, 08:13, 09:01, 09:03, 09:18, 10:15, 10:28, 13:20
- \* cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 09:11, 09:18
- \* create, creation, Creator is found in: 04:03, 09:11, 11:01, 12:27
- \* cross is found in: 12:01
- \* crown, to crown is found in: 02:07
- \* crucify is found in: 06:04
- \* curse, cursed is found in: 06:07
- \* curtain is found in: 06:19, 10:19
- \* darkness is found in: 12:18
- \* David is found in: 04:06, 11:32
- \* day of the Lord, day of Yahweh is found in: 10:23
- \* death, die, dead is found in: 02:13, 05:07, 06:01, 07:22, 09:16, 09:27, 10:28, 11:04, 11:05, 11:11, 11:13, 11:17

- \* deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 03:12
- \* descendant, descended from is found in: 07:04, 11:17
- \* desert, wilderness is found in: 03:07, 03:16, 11:35
- \* destiny, destine, destined is found in: 09:27
- \* destroyer is found in: 11:27
- \* discipline, self-discipline is found in: 12:04, 12:07
- \* disgrace, disgraceful is found in: 11:23
- \* disobey, disobedient, disobedience is found in: 02:02, 03:16, 04:06, 04:08, 11:29
- \* divine is found in: 11:07
- \* earth, earthly is found in: 01:10, 08:03, 09:01, 11:13, 12:25
- \* Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 03:16, 08:08, 11:20, 11:23, 11:27, 11:29
- \* encourage, encouragement is found in: 03:12, 06:16, 10:23, 12:04, 13:18, 13:22
- \* endure, endurance is found in: 10:32, 11:27, 12:01, 12:07, 12:18
- \* Enoch is found in: 11:05
- \* Esau is found in: 11:20, 12:14
- \* everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 05:09, 06:01, 09:11, 10:32, 13:20
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 03:12, 05:12, 10:19
- \* faith is found in: 04:01, 06:01, 06:11, 10:19, 10:38, 11:01, 11:05, 11:07, 11:08, 11:11, 11:13, 11:17, 11:20, 11:23, 11:27, 11:29, 11:32, 11:39, 12:01, 13:07
- \* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 02:16, 03:01, 03:05, 10:23, 11:11
- \* ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 01:01, 03:09, 07:01, 07:04, 08:08, 11:01, 12:07
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 12:18
- \* fire is found in: 01:06, 10:26, 11:32, 12:18, 12:27
- \* firstborn is found in: 01:06, 11:27, 12:22
- \* flesh is found in: 02:13, 05:07, 09:08, 09:13, 10:19, 12:09
- \* footstool is found in: 10:11
- \* foreigner, foreign, alien is found in: 11:08, 11:13, 11:32
- \* forever is found in: 01:08, 05:06, 06:19, 07:15, 07:20, 07:22, 07:27, 10:11, 13:07, 13:20
- \* forgive, forgiveness is found in: 09:21, 10:17
- \* sexual immorality is found in: 12:14, 13:03
- \* forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 13:05
- \* foundation, founded is found in: 01:10, 04:03, 06:01, 09:25, 11:08

- \* free, freedom, liberty is found in: 02:13, 09:13, 13:05, 13:22
- \* fruit, fruitful is found in: 12:09, 13:15
- \* gate, gate bar is found in: 13:12
- \* generation is found in: 03:09
- \* Gideon is found in: 11:32
- \* gift is found in: 02:02, 08:03, 09:08, 11:04
- \* glory, glorious is found in: 01:01, 02:07, 03:01, 09:03, 13:20
- \* goat, kid is found in: 09:11, 09:18, 11:35
- \* God is found in: 01:01, 02:02, 03:12, 03:16, 04:01, 07:01, 08:08, 08:10, 09:23, 10:01, 10:11, 10:23, 10:30, 11:01, 12:07, 12:27, 13:20
- \* godly, godliness is found in: 11:07
- \* God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 05:04, 12:09
- \* gold is found in: 09:03
- \* good, goodness is found in: 10:01
- \* good news, gospel is found in: 04:01, 04:06
- \* grace, gracious is found in: 02:09, 04:14, 10:28, 12:14, 13:09, 13:24
- \* groan is found in: 13:15
- \* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 01:10, 06:01, 09:11, 10:30
- \* hard, hardness, harden is found in: 03:12, 04:06
- \* heal, cure is found in: 12:12
- \* heart is found in: 03:07, 03:09, 03:12, 03:14, 04:12, 08:10, 10:15, 10:19, 13:09
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 01:10, 03:01, 04:14, 06:04, 07:25, 08:01, 08:03, 09:23, 11:11, 11:15, 12:22, 12:25
- \* heifer is found in: 09:13
- \* heir is found in: 01:01, 06:16, 11:07, 11:08
- \* high priest is found in: 02:16, 03:01, 04:14, 05:01, 05:04, 05:09, 06:19, 07:25, 07:27, 08:03, 09:06, 09:11, 09:25, 13:09
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 03:01, 12:09, 12:14
- \* holy place, most holy place is found in: 08:01, 09:01, 09:03, 09:08, 09:11, 09:23, 09:25, 10:19, 13:09
- \* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 02:02, 03:07, 06:04, 09:08, 10:15, 10:28
- \* honor, to honor is found in: 02:07, 03:01, 05:04
- \* house is found in: 08:08, 08:10

- \* household is found in: 11:07
- \* house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 03:01, 10:19
- \* imitate, imitator is found in: 13:07
- \* inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 01:04, 01:13, 06:11, 09:13, 11:08, 12:14
- \* iniquity is found in: 10:17
- \* instruct, instruction is found in: 11:20, 12:04
- \* intercede, intercession is found in: 07:25
- \* Isaac is found in: 11:08, 11:17, 11:20
- \* Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 04:06, 08:08, 08:10, 11:27
- \* Jacob, Israel is found in: 11:08, 11:20
- \* Jephthah is found in: 11:32
- \* Jericho is found in: 11:29
- \* Jerusalem is found in: 12:22
- \* Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 02:09, 03:01, 04:14, 05:09, 06:19, 07:20, 10:08, 10:19, 12:01, 13:07, 13:12, 13:20
- \* Joseph (OT) is found in: 11:20
- \* Joshua is found in: 04:08
- \* joy, joyful is found in: 01:08, 10:32, 12:01, 13:15
- \* Judah is found in: 07:13, 08:08
- \* judge, judgment is found in: 06:01, 09:27, 10:26, 10:30, 13:03
- \* judge is found in: 12:22
- \* just, justice, justly is found in: 01:08, 02:02, 11:32
- \* king is found in: 07:01, 11:23, 11:27
- \* kingdom is found in: 01:08, 11:32, 12:27
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 08:11, 10:26, 11:08, 13:01
- \* lampstand is found in: 09:01
- \* law, principle is found in: 05:12, 07:15, 08:10
- \* lawless, lawlessness is found in: 01:08
- \* law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 07:04, 07:11, 07:18, 07:27, 08:03, 09:18, 09:21, 10:01, 10:08, 10:15, 10:28
- \* Levite, Levi is found in: 07:04, 07:07, 07:11
- \* life, live, living, alive is found in: 03:12, 04:12, 07:01, 07:15, 09:13, 10:19, 10:30, 11:08, 12:09, 12:22

- \* like, likeness is found in: 07:15
- \* lion is found in: 11:32
- \* Lord is found in: 01:10, 02:02, 07:13, 07:20, 08:01, 08:10, 08:11, 10:15, 10:30, 12:04, 12:14, 13:05, 13:20
- \* love is found in: 06:09, 10:23, 12:04, 13:01, 13:05
- \* majesty is found in: 01:01, 08:01
- \* manna is found in: 09:03
- \* mediator is found in: 08:06, 09:13, 12:22
- \* Melchizedek is found in: 05:06, 05:09, 06:19, 07:01, 07:15
- \* mercy, merciful is found in: 02:16, 04:14, 08:11, 10:28
- \* mighty, might is found in: 11:32
- \* mind is found in: 07:20, 10:15
- \* minister, ministry is found in: 08:06
- \* miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 02:02
- \* mock, ridicule, scoff at is found in: 06:04, 10:32, 11:35
- \* Moses is found in: 03:01, 03:16, 07:13, 08:03, 09:18, 11:23, 11:27, 12:18
- \* Most High is found in: 07:01
- \* name is found in: 01:04, 02:11, 06:09, 13:15
- \* neighbor is found in: 08:11
- \* new covenant is found in: 08:08, 09:13, 12:22
- \* Noah is found in: 11:07
- \* oath, swear, swear by is found in: 03:09, 03:16, 06:13, 06:16, 07:20, 07:27
- \* obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 05:07, 11:08, 12:09, 13:15
- \* oil is found in: 01:08
- \* Passover is found in: 11:27
- \* patient, patience is found in: 06:11, 06:13, 09:27, 10:35, 12:01
- \* peace, peaceful is found in: 07:01, 11:29, 12:09, 12:14, 13:20
- \* people of God, my people is found in: 04:08, 08:10, 10:30, 11:23
- \* perfect is found in: 05:09, 07:11, 07:18, 07:27, 09:08, 09:11, 10:01, 10:11, 11:39, 12:01, 12:22, 13:20
- \* perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 01:10, 11:29
- \* persecute, persecution is found in: 10:32
- \* Pharaoh, king of Egypt is found in: 11:23

- \* pierce is found in: 04:12
- \* possess, possession is found in: 10:32
- \* power, powers is found in: 01:01, 02:13, 07:15, 11:11
- \* praise is found in: 13:15
- \* pray, prayer is found in: 05:07, 13:18
- \* priest, priesthood is found in: 05:06, 07:01, 07:11, 07:13, 07:15, 07:20, 07:22, 08:03, 09:06, 10:01, 10:11, 10:19
- \* prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 10:32, 13:03
- \* proclaim, proclamation is found in: 02:11
- \* promise is found in: 04:01, 06:11, 06:13, 08:06, 09:13, 10:23, 10:35, 11:08, 11:11, 11:13, 11:17, 11:32, 11:39, 12:25
- \* prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 01:01, 11:32
- \* prostitute, harlot, whore is found in: 11:29
- \* proud, pride, prideful is found in: 03:05
- \* punish, punishment is found in: 02:02, 10:28, 12:04
- \* pure, purify, purification is found in: 07:25, 13:03
- \* quench is found in: 11:32
- \* Rahab is found in: 11:29
- \* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 07:15, 11:17
- \* rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 03:07, 03:09, 03:14, 03:16
- \* receive is found in: 02:02, 04:14, 07:11, 11:08
- \* redeem, redemption, redeemer is found in: 09:11
- \* Sea of Reeds, Red Sea is found in: 11:29
- \* reject is found in: 10:28, 12:14
- \* repent, repentance is found in: 06:01, 06:04, 12:14
- \* rest is found in: 03:09, 03:16, 04:01, 04:03, 04:06, 04:08
- \* resurrection is found in: 06:01, 11:35
- \* reveal, revelation is found in: 09:08, 09:25
- \* reverence is found in: 11:07, 12:27
- \* reward is found in: 10:35, 11:05, 11:23
- \* righteous, righteousness is found in: 01:08, 05:12, 07:01, 10:38, 11:04, 11:07, 12:09, 12:22
- \* right hand is found in: 01:01, 01:13, 08:01, 10:11, 12:01

- \* rod is found in: 09:03
- \* run, running is found in: 12:01
- \* Sabbath is found in: 04:08
- \* sacrifice, offering is found in: 05:01, 07:27, 08:03, 09:06, 09:08, 09:23, 09:25, 09:27, 10:01, 10:05, 10:08, 10:11, 10:17, 10:26, 11:04, 11:17
- \* salvation is found in: 01:13, 02:02, 02:09, 05:09, 06:09, 09:27
- \* Samson is found in: 11:32
- \* Samuel is found in: 11:32
- \* sanctify, sanctification is found in: 02:11, 10:08, 10:11, 10:28, 13:12
- \* sanctuary is found in: 09:01
- \* Sarah, Sarai is found in: 11:11
- \* save, safe is found in: 07:25, 11:07
- \* scepter is found in: 01:08
- \* scroll is found in: 09:18, 10:05
- \* seed is found in: 02:16
- \* seek, sought is found in: 11:05
- \* seize is found in: 10:32
- \* servant, slave, slavery is found in: 01:06, 02:13, 08:01
- \* serve, service is found in: 06:09, 07:13, 08:03, 09:13, 10:11, 13:09
- \* set apart is found in: 09:13
- \* shadow is found in: 10:01
- \* shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 02:11, 11:15, 12:01, 13:12
- \* sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 11:35, 13:20
- \* shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 13:20
- \* sign, proof, reminder is found in: 10:01
- \* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 01:01, 03:12, 03:16, 04:14, 05:01, 07:25, 07:27, 08:11, 09:13, 09:25, 09:27, 10:01, 10:05, 10:08, 10:11, 10:17, 10:26, 11:23, 12:01, 12:04, 13:09
- \* slaughter is found in: 07:01
- \* son, son of is found in: 02:09, 12:04, 12:07
- \* Son of God, the Son, Son is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 04:14, 05:07, 06:04, 07:01, 07:27, 10:28
- \* Son of Man, son of man is found in: 02:05
- \* soul is found in: 04:12, 06:19, 10:38, 13:15

- \* spirit, spiritual is found in: 01:06, 04:12, 12:09, 12:22
- \* staff is found in: 11:20
- \* stone, stoning is found in: 11:35, 12:18
- \* subject, be subject to, in subjection to is found in: 02:05, 02:07
- \* submit, in submission is found in: 13:15
- \* suffer, suffering is found in: 02:09, 02:16, 05:07, 09:25, 10:32, 12:07, 13:12
- \* sword is found in: 04:12, 11:32, 11:35
- \* tabernacle is found in: 08:01, 08:03, 09:01, 09:06, 09:08, 09:11, 09:21, 13:09
- \* teach, teaching, teacher, taught is found in: 08:11
- \* teacher, Teacher is found in: 05:12
- \* tempt, temptation is found in: 02:16, 04:14
- \* tent is found in: 11:08
- \* tenth, tithe is found in: 07:01, 07:04, 07:07
- \* terror, terrify is found in: 12:18
- \* test is found in: 03:07, 03:09, 11:17, 11:35
- \* testimony, testify is found in: 02:02, 02:05, 03:05, 07:07, 10:15, 10:28
- \* thorn, thistle is found in: 06:07
- \* throne is found in: 01:08, 04:14, 08:01, 12:01
- \* Timothy is found in: 13:22
- \* trample is found in: 10:28
- \* transgress, transgression is found in: 02:02
- \* tremble is found in: 12:18
- \* tribe is found in: 07:13
- \* true, truth, come true is found in: 08:01, 09:23, 10:19, 10:26
- \* trumpet is found in: 12:18
- \* trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 02:13
- \* turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 03:12, 10:38, 12:25
- \* unbeliever, unbelief is found in: 03:12, 03:16
- \* unclean is found in: 09:13
- \* ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness is found in: 12:14
- \* unholy is found in: 10:28

- \* unjust, unjustly, injustice is found in: 06:09
- \* unrighteous, unrighteousness is found in: 08:11
- \* voice is found in: 03:07, 03:14, 12:18, 12:25
- \* walk is found in: 13:09
- \* watch, watchman is found in: 13:15
- \* water, waters is found in: 10:19
- \* will of God is found in: 02:02, 10:05, 10:08, 10:35, 13:20
- \* witness, eyewitness is found in: 07:15, 10:28, 12:01
- \* word is found in: 13:22
- \* word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:01, 04:12, 06:04, 07:15, 13:07
- \* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 03:09, 04:03, 04:08, 06:01, 09:13, 10:23
- \* world, worldly is found in: 10:05, 11:07, 11:35
- \* worship is found in: 01:06, 09:01, 11:20, 12:27
- \* worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 03:01, 06:07, 11:35
- \* wrath, fury is found in: 04:03
- \* written is found in: 10:05
- \* Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 12:22

## Hebrews 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is about how Jesus is superior to the angels.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:5, 7-13, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

### “Our ancestors”

This letter begins with an assumption of a Jewish audience. This is why it is called “Hebrews.”

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way of proving Jesus is better than the angels.

#### Poetry

The author uses many poetic elements in his letter. This is not typical of a letter and causes his teachings concerning the person of Christ to stand out.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prophecy

Jesus literally fulfilled these prophecies about the Messiah even though the prophecies often contained poetic or metaphorical language. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)

## Hebrews 1:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Long ago God communicated frequently to our ancestors in various ways by what the prophets said and wrote. <sup>2</sup> But now when this final age is beginning, God has communicated to us by his own Son. God has chosen him to possess all things. By him God also created the universe. <sup>3</sup> God's Son is the light of God's powerful brilliance. He shows exactly what God is truly like. All things that exist—he keeps them existing by giving powerful commands. After he had acted so that all sin should be forgiven, he rose into heaven and sat down at the highest place of honor, at the right side of God the Father, where he rules with him.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Long ago God spoke to our ancestors through the prophets at many times and in many ways. <sup>2</sup> But in these last days, he has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. <sup>3</sup> He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. After he had made cleansing for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.

### translationWords:

- God
- ancestor, father, forefather
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- appoint, appointed
- heir
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- glory, glorious
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- power, powers
- clean, cleanse
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- right hand
- majesty

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This prologue lays the background for the whole book: the unsurpassing greatness of the Son—the Son is greater than all. The book begins with emphasizing that the Son is better than the prophets and the angels.

- **General Information:** - Though not told at the opening, this letter was written particularly to Hebrews (Jews), who would have understood the many Old Testament references.
- **in these last days** - “in these final days.” This phrase refers to the time when Jesus began his ministry, extending until God establishes his complete rule in his creation.
- **through a Son** - “Son” is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **to be the heir of all things** - The author speaks of the Son as if he will inherit wealth and property from his Father. AT: “to possess all things” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **It is through him that God also made the universe** - “It is through the Son that God also made all things”
- **the brightness of God’s glory** - “the light of his glory.” God’s glory is associated with a very bright light. The author is saying that the Son embodies that light and fully represents God’s glory.
- **the very character of his essence** - “the image of God’s being.” This is similar in meaning to “is the radiance of his glory.” The Son embodies the character and essence of God and fully represents everything that God is. It can be stated as a new sentence. AT: “The Son is just like God” or “What is true about God is true about the Son”
- **the word of his power** - “his powerful word.” Here “word” refers to a message or command. AT: “his powerful command” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **After he had made cleansing for sins** - The abstract noun “cleansing” can be expressed as a verb: “making clean.” AT: “After he had finished making us clean from sins” or “After he had finished purifying us from our sins” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **he had made cleansing for sins** - The author speaks of forgiving sins as if it were making a person clean. AT: “he had made it possible for God to forgive our sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high** - Here “right hand” refers to a place of honor. AT: “he sat down in the place of honor next to the Majesty on high” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the Majesty on high** - Here “Majesty” refers to God. AT: “God Most High” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 1:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> God has made his Son to be so much more important than the angels, that he has far more honor and authority than they do. <sup>5</sup> In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any angel what he said to his Son:

”You are my Son!

Today I have declared to all that I am your Father!”

And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son:

”I will be his Father,

and he will be my Son.”

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> He has become just as superior to the angels, as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name. <sup>5</sup> For to which of the angels did God ever say,

”You are my son,

today I have become your father” and again,

”I will be a father to him,

and he will be a son to me”?

### translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- name
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The first prophetic quotation (You are my son) comes from the Psalms. The prophet Samuel wrote the second one (I will be a father to him). All occurrences of “he” refer to Jesus, the Son. The word “You” refers to Jesus, and the words “I” and “me” refer to God the Father.
- **He has become** - “The Son has become”

- **as the name he has inherited is more excellent than their name** - Here “name” refers to honor and authority. AT: “as the honor and authority he has inherited is superior to their honor and authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he has inherited** - The author speaks of receiving honor and authority as if he were inheriting wealth and property from his father. AT: “he has received” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For to which of the angels did God ever say, “You are my son ... a son to me”?** - This question emphasizes that God does not call any angel his son. AT: “For God never said to any of the angels ‘You are my son ... a son to me.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **You are my son ... I have become your father** - These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **and again** - The word “again” indicates that a similar question applies to the second quote. The word “again” can be simply deleted or replaced with the question. AT: “and” or “and about which of the angels did God ever say” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 1:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> When God brought his honored Son, his only Son, into the world, he commanded:

“All my angels must worship him.”

<sup>7</sup> And in the scriptures it is written about the angels:

”God has made his angels to be spirits,  
and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> But again, when God brings the firstborn into the world, he says, “All God’s angels must worship him.” <sup>7</sup> About the angels he says,

”He is the one who makes his angels spirits,  
and his servants flames of fire.”

**translationWords:**

- firstborn
- worship
- spirit, spiritual
- servant, slave, slavery
- fire

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This first quotation in this section (All God’s angels ... ) comes from one of the books Moses wrote. The second one (He who makes ... ) is from the Psalms.
- **the firstborn** - This means Jesus. The author refers to him as the “firstborn” to emphasize the Son’s importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God has other sons like Jesus. AT: “his honored Son, his only Son” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he says** - “God says”
- **He is the one who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire** - Possible meanings are 1) “God has made his angels to be spirits who serve him with power like flames of fire” (UDB) or 2) God makes the wind and flames of fire his messengers and servants. In the original language the word for “angel” is the same as “messenger,” and the word for “spirits” is the same as “wind.” With either possible meaning, the point is that the angels serve the Son because he is superior. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 1:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But in the scriptures, it is also written about God's Son:

"You who are God will rule forever,  
and you will reign justly over your kingdom.

<sup>9</sup> You have loved people's righteous deeds and you have hated people's sinful deeds.

So God, whom you worship, has caused you to be more joyful than anyone else."

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But about the Son he says,

"Your throne, God, is forever and ever.  
The scepter of your kingdom is the scepter of justice.

<sup>9</sup> You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness.

Therefore God, your God, has anointed you  
with the oil of joy more than your companions."

**translationWords:**

- Son of God, the Son, Son
- throne
- forever
- scepter
- kingdom
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- lawless, lawlessness
- anoint, anointed
- oil
- joy, joyful
- companion

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This scriptural quotation comes from the Psalms.
- **But about the Son he says** - “But God says this about the Son”
- **Son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **Your throne, God, is forever and ever** - The Son’s throne represents his rule. AT: “You are God, and your reign will last forever and ever” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The scepter of your kingdom is the scepter of justice** - Here “scepter” refers to the Son’s rule. AT: “And you will rule over the people of your kingdom with justice” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **has anointed you with the oil of joy more than your companions** - Here “oil of joy” refers to the joy that the Son felt when God honored him. AT: “has honored you and made you more joyful than anyone else” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 1:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> We also know that his Son is superior to angels because in the scriptures it is written about God's Son,

”Lord, it was you who created the earth in the beginning.

You also made the rest of the universe, the stars and everything in the sky.

<sup>11</sup> Those things will no longer exist, but you will keep on living forever.

They will wear out as clothing wears out.

<sup>12</sup> You will roll them up as if they were old clothes.

Then you will change all that is in the universe for something new,

like someone putting on new clothes.

But you stay the same, and you live forever!”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> ”In the beginning, Lord, you laid the earth's foundation.

The heavens are the work of your hands.

<sup>11</sup> They will perish, but you will continue.

They will all wear out like a piece of clothing.

<sup>12</sup> You will roll them up like a cloak,

and they will be changed like a piece of clothing.

But you are the same,

and your years do not end.”

**translationWords:**

- Lord
- earth, earthly
- foundation, founded
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- perish, perishing, perishable

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The author continues explaining that Jesus is superior to the angels.
- **General Information:** - This quotation comes from another Psalm.
- **In the beginning** - “Before anything existed”
- **you laid the earth’s foundation** - The author speaks of God creating the earth as if he built a building on a foundation. AT: “you created the earth” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The heavens are the work of your hands** - Here “hands” refer to God’s power and action. AT: “You made the heavens” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They will perish** - “The heavens and earth will disappear” or “The heavens and earth will no longer exist”
- **wear out like a piece of clothing** - The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a piece of clothing that will get old and eventually become useless. (See: [Simile](#))
- **roll them up like a cloak** - The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a robe or another kind of outer garment. (See: [Simile](#))
- **they will be changed like a piece of clothing** - The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were clothing that could be exchanged for other clothing. (See: [Simile](#))
- **they will be changed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you will change them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your years do not end** - Periods of time are used to represent God’s eternal existence. AT: “your life will never end” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 1:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> God has never said to any angel what he said to his Son:

”Sit in the most important place next to me and rule with me  
while I defeat all of your enemies for you to rule over them!”

<sup>14</sup> The angels are only spirits whom God has sent out to serve and care for believers whom God will soon save completely, as he has promised to do for them.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> But to which of the angels has God said at any time,

”Sit at my right hand  
until I make your enemies a stool for your feet”?

<sup>14</sup> Are not all angels spirits who serve, and who are sent to care for those who will inherit salvation?

**translationWords:**

- angel, archangel
- right hand
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- salvation

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This quotation comes from another Psalm.
- **But to which of the angels has God said at any time ... feet”?** - The author uses a question to emphasize that God has never said this to an angel. AT: “But God has never said to an angel at any time ... feet.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Sit at my right hand** - Here “right hand” refers to a place of honor. AT: “Sit next to me in the place of honor” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **until I make your enemies a stool for your feet** - Christ’s enemies are spoken of as if they will become an object on which a king rests his feet. This image represents defeat and dishonor for his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Are not all angels spirits ... inherit salvation?** - The author uses this question to remind the readers that angels are not as powerful as Christ, but they have a different role. AT: “All angels are spirits who ... inherit salvation.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **for those who will inherit salvation** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. AT: “for those whom God will save” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 01 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is about how Jesus is better than Moses, the great Jew.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:6-8, 12-13, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Brothers

The author probably uses the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Israelites and fellow Christians. Extra care should be taken to make sure the reference is clear. It may also be necessary to occasionally leave the referent vague.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prophecy

Jesus literally fulfilled these prophecies about the Messiah but the prophecies themselves often contain poetic or metaphorical language. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), and [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 02:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 2:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> So, since that is true, we must pay very great attention to what we have heard about God's Son, so that we do not gradually stop believing it.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Therefore we must give far more attention to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away from it.

### translationWords

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This is the first of five urgent warnings the author gives.
- **we must** - Here "we" refers to the author and includes his audience. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))
- **so that we do not drift away** - Believing in God's word less and less is spoken of as if a boat were drifting away on the water from where it should be. AT: "so that we do not gradually stop believing it" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2:2-4

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> When the angels spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said was valid. God justly punished all who disobeyed him and violated his law. <sup>3</sup> Since this is true, we will certainly not escape God; he will certainly judge us if we ignore the good news about how he saves us. It was the Lord Jesus who first told us about this, and the disciples who heard him have assured us that he did so. <sup>4</sup> God also confirmed to us that this message was true by giving believers power to do mighty deeds that prove these things are true. And the Holy Spirit also gives many gifts to the believers, just as he desires to distribute them.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> For if the message that was spoken through the angels is valid, and every transgression and disobedience receives just punishment, <sup>3</sup> how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation? This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it. <sup>4</sup> At the same time God testified to it by signs, wonders, and various powerful deeds, and by distributing the gifts of the Holy Spirit according to his will.

### translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- transgress, transgression
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- receive
- just, justice, justly
- punish, punishment
- salvation
- Lord
- confirm, confirmation
- God
- testimony, testify
- miracle, wonder, sign
- gift
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- will of God

### translationNotes:

- **For if the message that was spoken through the angels** - The Jews believed that God spoke his law to Moses through angels. This can be stated in active form. AT: "For if the message

that God spoke through the angels” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **For if the message** - The author is certain that these things are true. AT: “Because the message”
- **is valid** - “is certain” or “is true”
- **every transgression and disobedience receives just punishment** - Here “transgression” and “disobedience” stand for the people who are guilty of these sins. AT: “every person who sins and disobeys will receive just punishment” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **transgression and disobedience** - These two words mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation?** - The author uses a question to emphasize that the people will certainly receive punishment if they refuse God’s salvation through Christ. AT: “then God will certainly punish us if we do not pay attention to his message about how God will save us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **ignore** - “do not care for” or “consider unimportant”
- **This is salvation that was first announced by the Lord** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Lord himself first announced the message about how God will save us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and confirmed to us by those who heard it** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and then those who heard the message confirmed it to us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **according to his will** - “in just the way he wanted to do it”

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> God has not put the angels in charge of the new world he will make, but instead, he is putting Christ in charge of it. <sup>6</sup> Someone solemnly spoke to God about this somewhere in the scriptures, saying,

”No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him!

No human is worthy enough for you to care for him!

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> For it was not to the angels that God subjected the world to come, about which we are speaking. <sup>6</sup> Instead, someone has somewhere testified, saying,

”What is man, that you are mindful of him?

Or a son of man, that you care for him?

### translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- subject, be subject to, in subjection to
- testimony, testify
- Son of Man, son of man

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that the earth will one day be under the rule of the Lord Jesus.
- **General Information:** - The quotation here is from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. It continues on through the next section.
- **For it was not to the angels that God subjected** - “For God did not make the angels rulers over”
- **the world to come** - Here “world” refers to the people who live there. And “to come” means that this is the world in the next age after Christ returns. AT: “the people who will live in the new world” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **What is man, that you are mindful of him?** - This question is used to emphasize that humans are not important enough for God to pay attention them. AT: “No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him!” (UDB) (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **Or a son of man, that you care for him?** - This means basically the same thing as the first question. This rhetorical question expresses surprise that humans are not important enough for God to care for them. AT: “No human is worthy enough for you to care for him!” (UDB) (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 2:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> You created humans a little less important than the angels,

Yet you have greatly honored them, as people honor kings. [1]Some ancient copies add: " ... *and you have put him in charge of the things you have made.*"

<sup>8</sup> You have put everything under their control."

God has determined that mankind will rule over everything. That means that nothing will be left out from him ruling it. But now, at this present time, we do not see mankind ruling over everything.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> You made man a little lower than the angels;

you crowned him with glory and honor. [1]Some older version add, *and you have put him over the works of your hands.*

<sup>8</sup> You put everything in subjection under his feet."

For it was to him that God has subjected all things. He did not leave anything not subjected to him. But now we do not yet see everything subjected to him.

**translationWords:**

- crown, to crown
- glory, glorious
- honor, to honor
- subject, be subject to, in subjection to

**translationNotes:**

- **a little lower than the angels** - The author speaks of people being less important than angels as if the people are standing in a position that is lower than the angels' position. AT: "less important than the angels" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **made man ... crowned him ... his feet ... to him** - Here, these phrases do not refer to a specific person but to humans in general, including both males and females. AT: "made humans ... crowned them ... their feet ... to them" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **you crowned him with glory and honor** - The gifts of glory and honor are spoken of as if they were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. AT: "you have given them great glory and honor" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **You put everything in subjection under his feet** - The author speaks of humans having control over everything as if they have stepped on everything with their feet. AT: “You have given them control over everything” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He did not leave anything not subjected to him** - This double negative means that all things will be subject to Christ. AT: “God made everything subject to them” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **we do not yet see everything subjected to him** - “we know that humans are not in control of everything yet”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> However, we do know about Jesus, who appeared in this life as a little less important than the angels. Because he suffered and died, God has made him the most important of all. He has made Jesus king over everything, because Jesus died for all mankind. It was because God was so kind to us that this happened.

<sup>10</sup> It was proper that God should make Jesus complete in every way by suffering and dying for us. God is the one who created all things, and he is the one for whom all things exist. And Jesus is the one who enables God to save people.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> But we see the one who was made lower than the angels for a short amount of time: Jesus, who, because of his suffering and death, has been crowned with glory and honor. So now by God's grace, he has tasted death for every man. <sup>10</sup> For it was proper for God, because everything exists for him and through him, to bring many sons to glory. It was proper for him to make the leader of their salvation complete through his sufferings.

### translationWords:

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- suffer, suffering
- grace, gracious
- son, son of
- salvation

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that Christ became lower than the angels when he came to earth to suffer death for forgiveness of sins, and that he became a merciful high priest to believers.
- **we see the one** - “we know there is one”
- **who was made** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God made” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **lower than the angels ... crowned with glory and honor** - Translate these as you did in 2:7.
- **has been crowned** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God crowned him” (See: **Active or Passive** and **Metaphor**)
- **has tasted death** - The experience of death is spoken of as if it were food that was tasted. AT: “has experienced death” or “has died” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **for every man** - Here, “man” means all people in general, including both males and females. AT: “for every person” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **bring many sons to glory** - The gift of glory is spoken of here as if it were a place to which people could be brought. AT: “save many sons” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **many sons** - Here this refers to believers in Christ, including males and females. AT: “many believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **the leader of their salvation** - The author speaks of salvation as if it were a place where Jesus led them. This means Jesus is the person who acted first in order to save others. AT: “the one who saves other people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **complete** - Becoming mature and completely trained is spoken of as if a person were made complete, perhaps complete in all his body parts. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Jesus, the one who sets his people apart for God, and those same people whom God declares as good before him, are all from the same source, God himself. So Jesus is not embarrassed to proclaim them to be his own brothers and sisters. <sup>12</sup> The Psalmist wrote that Christ said to God,

”I will proclaim to my brothers how awesome you are.

I will sing praise to you in the middle of the assembly of believers!”

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> For both the one who sanctifies and those who are sanctified have one source. So he is not ashamed to call them brothers. <sup>12</sup> He says,

”I will proclaim your name to my brothers,

I will sing about you from inside the assembly.”

### translationWords:

- sanctify, sanctification
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- brother
- proclaim, proclamation
- name
- assembly, assemble

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This prophetic quotation comes from a Psalm of King David.
- **the one who sanctifies** - “the one who makes others holy” or “the one who makes others pure from sin”
- **those who are sanctified** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whom he makes holy” or “those whom he makes pure from sin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **have one source** - Who that source is can be stated clearly. AT: “have one source, God himself” or “have the same Father” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he is not ashamed** - “Jesus is not ashamed”
- **is not ashamed to call them brothers** - This double negative means that he will claim them as his brothers. AT: “is pleased to call them his brothers” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **brothers** - Here this refers to all who have believed in Jesus, including both men and women. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

- **I will proclaim your name to my brothers** - Here “name” refers to the person’s reputation and what they have done. AT: “I will proclaim to my brothers the great things you have done” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **from inside the assembly** - “when believers come together to worship God”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 2:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:

“I will trust him.”

And in another scripture passage, Christ said about those who are like his children,

“I and the children whom God has given me are here.”

<sup>14</sup> So since those whom God calls his children are all human beings, Jesus also became a human being just like them. The devil has the power to cause people to be afraid to die, but Christ became human so that by his dying and defeating death he might make the devil powerless. <sup>15</sup> Jesus did this in order to free all of us who, all our lives, could not rid ourselves of the fear of death.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> And again,

“I will trust in him.”

And again,

“See, here am I and the children whom God has given me.”

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, since the children of God share flesh and blood, Jesus also shared the same things with them, so that through death he would do away with the one who had the power of death, that is, the devil. <sup>15</sup> This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives in slavery.

**translationWords:**

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- flesh
- blood
- death, die, dead
- power, powers
- free, freedom, liberty
- servant, slave, slavery

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The prophet Isaiah wrote these quotations.

- **And again** - “And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:” (UDB)
- **the children ... the children of God** - This speaks about those who believe in Christ as if they were children. AT: “those who are like my children ... those who are like children to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **share flesh and blood** - The phrase “flesh and blood” refers to people’s human nature. AT: “are all human beings” (UDB) (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Jesus also shared the same things with them** - “Jesus became human like them”
- **through death** - Here “death” can be stated as a verb. AT: “by dying” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **had the power of death** - Here “death” can be stated as a verb. AT: “had the power to cause people to die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **This was so that he would free all those who through fear of death lived all their lives in slavery** - The fear of death is spoken of as if it were slavery. Taking away someone’s fear is spoken of as it were freeing that person from slavery. AT: “This was so he might free all people. For we lived like slaves because we were afraid of dying” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 2:16-18

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Because Jesus became a human being, it is not angels that he has come to help. No, it is us who trust God as Abraham did whom he wants to help. <sup>17</sup> So God had to make Jesus to be exactly like us, like his human “brothers.” He became a high priest who acts mercifully to all people and who acts faithfully for God, so he could die for the people’s sins and make a way for God to forgive them. <sup>18</sup> Jesus is able to help those who are tempted to sin because he himself suffered and was tempted to sin, just as we are tempted to sin.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> For of course it is not with angels that he is concerned; instead, it is with the seed of Abraham that he is concerned. <sup>17</sup> So it was necessary for him to become like his brothers in all ways, so that he would be a merciful and faithful high priest in relation to the things of God, and so that he would bring about the pardon of the people’s sins. <sup>18</sup> Because Jesus himself has suffered and was tempted, he is able to help those who are tempted.

### translationWords:

- seed
- Abraham, Abram
- mercy, merciful
- faithful, faithfulness
- high priest
- suffer, suffering
- tempt, temptation

### translationNotes:

- **seed of Abraham** - Descendants of Abraham are spoken of as if they were his seed. AT: “the descendants of Abraham” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **it was necessary for him** - “it was necessary for Jesus”
- **like his brothers** - Here “brothers” refers to people in general. AT: “like human beings”
- **he would bring about the pardon of the people’s sins** - Christ’s death on the cross means that God can forgive sins. AT: “he might make it possible for God to forgive people’s sins”
- **was tempted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Satan tempted him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **who are tempted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom Satan is tempting” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 02 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:7-9,15, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Brothers

The author probably uses the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Israelites and fellow Christians. Extra care should be taken to make sure the reference is clear. It may be necessary to occasionally leave the referent vague.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Harden your hearts

This is a common metaphor used in Scripture. It indicates that a person who rejects Jesus will increasingly lack the spiritual discernment necessary to believe in him. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) and [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

#### Rhetorical questions

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way to convince his readers.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prophecy

Jesus literally fulfilled these prophecies about the Messiah but the prophecies themselves often contain poetic or metaphorical language. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), and [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 03:01 Notes](#)

**Hebrews 3:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> My fellow believers, God has set you apart and has chosen you to belong to himself. So consider Jesus. He is God's apostle to us and is also the high priest whom we say we believe in together. <sup>2</sup> He faithfully served God, who appointed him, just like Moses faithfully served all of God's people, whom we call God's house. **3-4** Now just as every house is made by someone, God made everything. So God has considered that Jesus is worthy for people to honor him more than they honor Moses, just as the one who builds a house deserves for people to honor him more than they should honor the house.

**ULB:**

**3** <sup>1</sup> Therefore, holy brothers, you share in a heavenly calling. Think about Jesus, the apostle and high priest of our confession. <sup>2</sup> He was faithful to God, who appointed him, just as Moses was also faithful in God's house. <sup>3</sup> For Jesus has been considered worthy of greater glory than Moses, because the one who builds a house has more honor than the house itself. <sup>4</sup> For every house is built by someone, but the one who built everything is God.

**translationWords:**

- holy, holiness
- brother
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- call, calling, called, call out
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- apostle, apostleship
- high priest
- confess, confession
- faithful, faithfulness
- appoint, appointed
- Moses
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- glory, glorious
- honor, to honor

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - This second warning is longer and more detailed and includes chapters 3 and 4. The writer begins by showing that Christ is better than his servant Moses.

- **holy brothers** - Here “brothers” refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women. AT: “holy brothers and sisters” or “my holy fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **you share in a heavenly calling** - Here “heavenly” represents God. AT: “God has called us together” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **apostle** - Here this term means someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve apostles. AT: “the one who was sent”
- **of our confession** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “confession” is expressed as the verb “confess.” AT: “whom we confess” or “in whom we believe” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **in God’s house** - The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. AT: “to all of God’s people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Jesus has been considered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has considered Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the one who built everything** - God’s acts of creating the world are spoken of as if he had built a house. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **every house is built by someone** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “every house has someone who built it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 3:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Moses very faithfully served God as he helped all of God's people, just as a servant faithfully serves his master. So Moses testified about what Jesus would say later. <sup>6</sup> But Christ is the Son who rules over God's people, and we are the people he rules if we continue to courageously believe in Christ and confidently expect God to do all that he has promised to do for us.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> On one hand, Moses was faithful as a servant in God's entire house. He was a testimony about the things that were to be spoken of in the future. <sup>6</sup> But Christ is the Son in charge of God's house. We are his house if we hold fast to our courage and to our proud confidence.

### translationWords:

- faithful, faithfulness
- testimony, testify
- Christ, Messiah
- proud, pride, prideful
- confidence, confident

### translationNotes:

- **On one hand** - This phrase starts a comparison between Moses and Christ. This phrase can be left out of your translation, if necessary.
- **in God's entire house** - The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. See how you translated this in 3:2. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He was a testimony about the things** - This phrase probably refers to all of Moses' work. AT: "Moses' life and work pointed to the things" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **were to be spoken of in the future** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Jesus would say in the future" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **in charge of God's house** - This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal house. AT: "who rules over God's people" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **We are his house** - This speaks of God's people as if they are a literal house. AT: "We are God's people" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **if we hold fast to our courage and to our proud confidence** - Here "courage" and "proud confidence" are abstract and can be stated as verbs. AT: "if we continue to be courageous and joyfully expect God to do what he has promised" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 3:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> The Holy Spirit caused the Psalmist to write these words in the scriptures to the Israelites:

”Now, when you hear God speak to you, <sup>8</sup> do not refuse to obey him, and do not let your desires be more important than what God says, for if you do, you would be just like your ancestors long ago, when they turned away from God and did not obey him.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, it is just as the Holy Spirit says:

”Today, if you hear his voice  
<sup>8</sup> do not harden your hearts  
 as in the rebellion,  
 in the time of testing in the wilderness.

**translationWords:**

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- voice
- heart
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- test
- desert, wilderness

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The warning here is a reminder that the Israelites’ unbelief kept almost all of them from entering into the land that God had promised them. Their unbelief was well illustrated in Exodus 17:1-7, when they complained against Moses and doubted that God was with them.
- **General Information:** - This quotation comes from the Old Testament in the book of Psalms.
- **if you hear his voice** - God’s commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. AT: “if you hear God speaking” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **do not harden your hearts** - Stubbornness is spoken of as if it were a heart that had been physically hardened. AT: “do not be stubborn” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **as in the rebellion, in the time of testing in the wilderness** - Here “rebellion” and “tested” can be stated as verbs. AT: “like when your ancestors rebelled against God and tested him in the wilderness” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 3:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Your ancestors repeatedly tested me, to see whether I would be patient with them, even though for forty years they saw all the amazing things I did.

<sup>10</sup> So I became angry with those people, and I said about them, ‘They are never faithful to me, and they do not understand how I wanted them to conduct their lives.’

<sup>11</sup> I was angry with them and solemnly declared, ‘They will not enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest!’”

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> This was when your ancestors rebelled by testing me, and when, during forty years, they saw my deeds.

<sup>10</sup> Therefore I was displeased with that generation.

I said, ‘They are always being led astray in their hearts.

They have not known my ways.’

<sup>11</sup> It is just as I swore in my anger:

‘They will never enter my rest.’”

**translationWords:**

- ancestor, father, forefather
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- test
- biblical time: year
- works, deeds, work, acts
- generation
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- heart
- oath, swear, swear by
- angry, anger
- rest

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This quotation is from the Psalms.
- **your ancestors** - Here “your” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

- **by testing me** - Here “me” refers to God.
- **forty years** - “40 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **I was displeased** - “I was angry” or “I was greatly unhappy”
- **They are always being led astray in their hearts** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “They are always going astray in their hearts” or “Their hearts are always going astray” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They are always being led astray in their hearts** - People who are unfaithful to God are spoken of as if someone were leading them off the right path to follow. AT: “They always refuse to follow me” or “They will not do what I command” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in their hearts** - Here “hearts” refers to their minds or desires. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **They have not known my ways** - This speaks of a manner of conducting one’s life as if it were a way or a path. AT: “They do not understand how I wanted them to conduct their lives” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They will never enter my rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. AT: “They will never enter the place of rest” or “I will never allow them to experience my blessings of rest” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 3:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> So, fellow believers, be careful that none of you stops trusting in Christ because of evil in your heart, which would cause you to reject the only God who actually lives. <sup>13</sup> Instead, each of you must encourage each other every day, while you still have the opportunity. If you are stubborn, others will deceive you and lead you to sin.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Be careful, brothers, so that among you there will not be anyone with an evil heart of unbelief, a heart that turns away from the living God. <sup>13</sup> Instead, encourage one another daily, as long as it is called “today,” so that no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin.

### translationWords:

- brother
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart
- unbeliever, unbelief
- turn, turn away, turn back
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- encourage, encouragement
- hard, hardness, harden
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### translationNotes:

- **brothers** - Here this refers to fellow Christians including males and females. AT: “brothers and sisters” or “fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **there will not be anyone with an evil heart of unbelief** - The heart is spoken of here as if it were a person’s mind, the center of a person’s will and motivation. AT: “none of you stop believing in God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a heart that turns away from the living God** - The heart of a person is spoken of as if it were the entire person, who could abandon the right path to follow. AT: “and you stop obeying the living God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the living God** - “the true God who is really alive”
- **as long as it is called “today”** - “while there is still opportunity”

- **no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the deceitfulness of sin does not harden any of you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin** - Being stubborn is spoken of as being hard or having a hard heart. The hardness is a result of being deceived by sin. This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “deceitfulness” is expressed as the verb “deceive.” AT: “no one among you will be deceived by sin and become stubborn” or “you do not sin, deceiving yourselves so that you become stubborn” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 3:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> We are now joined to Christ if we continue to seriously and confidently trust in him, from the time we first trusted in him to the time when we die. <sup>15</sup> The Psalmist wrote in the scripture that God said,

“Now, when you hear me speaking to you, do not stubbornly disobey me as your ancestors did when they rebelled against me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> For we have become partners of Christ if we firmly hold to our confidence in him from the beginning to the end. <sup>15</sup> About this it has been said,

”Today, if you hear his voice,  
do not harden your hearts,  
as in the rebellion.”

**translationWords:**

- Christ, Messiah
- confidence, confident
- voice
- heart
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This continues the quotation from the same psalm that was also quoted in 3:7.
- **For we have become** - Here “we” refers to both the writer and the readers. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **if we firmly hold to our confidence in him** - “if we continue to confidently trust in him”
- **from the beginning** - “from when we first begin to believe in him”
- **to the end** - This is a polite way of referring to when a person dies. AT: “until we die” (See: **Euphemism**)
- **it has been said** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the writer wrote” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **Today, if you hear** - God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. AT: "if you hear God speaking." See how you translated this in [3:7-8](#). "(See: [Metaphor](#))
- **as in the rebellion** - Here "rebellion" can be stated as a verb. AT: "like when your ancestors rebelled against God." See how you translated this in [3:7-8](#). (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 3:16-19****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Remember who it was who rebelled against God, even though they heard him speak to them. It was all of God's people who Moses led out of Egypt. <sup>17</sup> And remember who it was with whom God was disgusted for forty years. It was God's people who sinned, and their dead bodies lay there in the desert. <sup>18</sup> And remember about whom God solemnly declared, "They will not enter the land where I would let them rest." It was those Israelites who disobeyed God. <sup>19</sup> So, from that example we know that it was because they did not keep trusting in God that they were unable to enter the land where God would allow them to rest.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses? <sup>17</sup> With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness? <sup>18</sup> To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him? <sup>19</sup> And we see that they were not able to enter his rest because of unbelief.

**translationWords:**

- God
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Moses
- angry, anger
- biblical time: year
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- desert, wilderness
- oath, swear, swear by
- rest
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- unbeliever, unbelief

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The word "they" refers to the disobedient Israelites, and "we" refers to the author and readers. (See: **Inclusive "We"**)
- **Who was it who heard God and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses?** - The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can

be joined as one statement, if needed. AT: “All those who came out of Egypt with Moses heard God, yet they still rebelled.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **With whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness?** - The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can be joined as one statement, if needed. AT: “God was angry for forty years with those who sinned and let them die in the wilderness.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **forty years** - “40 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **To whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if it was not to those who disobeyed him?** - The author uses this question to teach his readers. AT: “And it was to those who disobeyed that he swore that he would not let them enter his rest.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **they would not enter his rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. AT: “they would not enter the place of rest” or “they would not experience his blessings of rest” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **because of unbelief** - Here “unbelief” can be stated in terms of the verb “trust.” AT: “because they did not trust him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 03 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is about how Jesus is the greatest high priest.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:3-4, 7, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's rest

This is probably a reference to a prophesied time when Israel would have peace. This may be physical peace or spiritual peace. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 04:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 4:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> God has promised that we would rest, but we must be careful, because we can miss God's place of rest. <sup>2</sup> We have heard the good news about how Jesus gives us God's rest, just as the Israelites heard God promise that they would rest in Canaan. But just as that message did not help many Israelites because they did not trust God as Joshua and Caleb did, the good news about Christ will not help us if we do not trust God.

### ULB:

4 <sup>1</sup> Therefore, let us be very careful so that none of you might seem to have failed to reach the promise left behind for you to enter God's rest. <sup>2</sup> For we were told the good news just as they were. But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed.[1]Other versions read, *But that message did not benefit those who heard it without joining faith to it.*

### translationWords:

- promise
- God
- rest
- good news, gospel
- faith

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Chapter 4 continues the warning to believers starting in 3:7. God, through the writer, gives believers a rest of which God's rest in the creation of the world is a picture.
- **Therefore** - "Since God will certainly punish those who do not obey" (3:19)
- **none of you might seem to have failed to reach the promise left behind for you to enter God's rest** - God's promise is spoken of as if it were a gift that God left behind when he visited the people. AT: "none of you fail to enter into God's rest, which he promised to us" or "God will allow you all to enter into his rest as he promised us" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **to enter God's rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. AT: "to enter the place of rest" or "to experience God's blessings of rest" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **For we were told the good news just as they were** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "For we heard the good news just as they did" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **as they were** - Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

- **But that message did not benefit those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed**  
- “But that message did not benefit those who did not join with the people who believed and obeyed.” The author is talking about two groups of people, those who received God’s covenant with faith, and those who heard it but did not believe. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 4:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> We who have believed in Christ are able to enter the place of rest because God said,

“Because I was angry with the people of Israel, I solemnly declared, ‘They will not enter the land where I would let them rest.’”

God said this even though his plans had been finished from the time he created the world. <sup>4</sup> What was written in the scriptures about the seventh day after he had spent six days creating the world, shows that this is true:

“Then, on the seventh day, God rested from his work of creating everything.”

<sup>5</sup> But note again what God said about the Israelites in the passage that I quoted previously:

“They will not enter the land where I would let them rest.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> For we who have believed are the ones who will enter that rest, just as he said,

”As I swore in my wrath,  
They will never enter my rest.”

Even so, his created works were finished at the foundation of the world. <sup>4</sup> For he has said somewhere about the seventh day,

“God rested on the seventh day from all his deeds.” <sup>5</sup> Again he has said,  
“They will never enter my rest.”

**translationWords:**

- believe, believe in, belief
- rest
- wrath, fury
- create, creation, Creator
- works, deeds, work, acts
- foundation, founded
- biblical time: day

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Here the first quotation (As I swore ... ) is from a psalm, the second one (God rested on ... ) is from Moses' writings, and the third (They will never enter ... ) is again from the same psalm.
- **we who have believed** - "we who believe"
- **who will enter that rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. AT: "who will enter the place of rest" or "who will experience God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **just as he said** - "just as God said"
- **As I swore in my wrath** - "As I swore when I was very angry"
- **They will never enter my rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. AT: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his created works were finished** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "he finished creating" or "he finished his works of creation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **at the foundation of the world** - The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. AT: "at the beginning of the world" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the seventh day** - This is the ordinal number for "seven." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 4:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Some people still enter God's rest. But the Israelites who first heard God promise that they would rest—they did not enter that place of resting, because they refused to believe God. <sup>7</sup> But God set another time when we may enter that place of resting. That time is now! We know that is true because much later than when the Israelites rebelled against God in the desert, he caused King David to write what I have already quoted,

“Right now, when you understand what God is saying to you, do not stubbornly disobey him.”

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, because it is still reserved for some to enter his rest, and since many Israelites who heard the good news did not enter it because of disobedience, <sup>7</sup> God has again set a certain day called, “Today.” After many days, he spoke through David, as it was earlier said,

”Today if you hear his voice,  
do not harden your hearts.”

### translationWords:

- rest
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- good news, gospel
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- David
- hard, hardness, harden

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here we find out that this quotation from the Psalms was written by David. (See: 3:7-8)
- **it is still reserved for some to enter his rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God still allows some people to enter his place of rest” or “God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest” (See: **Active or Passive** and **Metaphor**)
- **if you hear his voice** - God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. AT: “if you hear God speaking.” See how you translated this in 3:7-8. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **do not harden your hearts** - Stubbornness is spoken of as if it were a heart that had been physically hardened. AT: “do not be stubborn.” See how you translated this in [3:7-8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 4:8-11

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> If Joshua had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give them, then much later God would not have spoken again about another day of rest. But he did give them another promise of rest. <sup>9</sup> So, just as God rested on the seventh day after he finished creating everything, there remains a time when God's people will rest eternally. <sup>10</sup> Whoever enters God's place of resting has ceased from his work, just as God finished doing his work of creating everything.

<sup>11</sup> So we eagerly enter into the rest of God by following Christ, so that the example of those who disobey will not influence us and ruin us too.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> For if Joshua had given them rest, God would not have spoken about another day. <sup>9</sup> Therefore there is still a Sabbath rest reserved for God's people. <sup>10</sup> For he who enters into God's rest has himself also rested from his deeds, just as God did from his. <sup>11</sup> Therefore let us be eager to enter that rest, so that no one will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did.

### translationWords:

- Joshua
- rest
- Sabbath
- people of God, my people
- works, deeds, work, acts
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Here the writer warns believers not to disobey but to enter into the rest God offers. He reminds them that God's word will convict them and that they can come in prayer with the confidence that God will help them.
- **if Joshua had given them rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that Joshua could give. AT: "if Joshua had brought the Israelites to the place where God would give them rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **there is still a Sabbath rest reserved for God's people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "there is still a Sabbath rest that God has reserved for his people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Sabbath rest** - Eternal peace and security are spoken of as if they were the Sabbath day, the Jewish day of worship and rest from working. AT: "eternal rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **he who enters into God's rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they are a place to enter. AT: "the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **let us be eager to enter that rest** - The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they are a place to enter. AT: "we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did** - Disobedience is spoken of as if it were a hole that a person could physically fall into by accident. This passage can be reworded so that the abstract noun "disobedience" is expressed as the verb "disobey." AT: "will disobey in the same way as they did" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **that they did** - Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors during the time of Moses.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 4:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> God's words are alive and powerful, and they are able to cut like a sharp sword—cutting so deep that it can separate out the difference between our soul and our spirit. God's words are just like a sword that cuts deeply, down so deep they can cut into us like a sharp sword cuts through the joints of an animal. Those words cut even into the hardest places in us, like a sword that can cut down into the marrow within the bones. God's words are like a judge, deciding what thoughts are good or what thoughts are bad, and his words test the motives hidden deep within each of our hearts. <sup>13</sup> God knows everything about everyone. Nothing is hidden from him. Everything is completely open to him and he sees everything we do. We must all appear before God and we must tell him how we have lived our lives.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. It pierces even to the division of soul from spirit, and joints from marrow. It is able to know the heart's thoughts and intentions. <sup>13</sup> Nothing created is hidden before God. Instead, everything is bare and open to the eyes of the one to whom we must give account.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- life, live, living, alive
- sword
- pierce
- soul
- spirit, spiritual
- heart

### translationNotes:

- **the word of God is living** - Here “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to humanity whether through speech or through written messages. AT: “the words of God are living” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **living and active** - This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective. (See: [Personification](#))
- **sharper than any two-edged sword** - A two-edged sword can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **two-edged sword** - the blade of a sword that is sharp on both edges

- **It pierces even to the division of soul from spirit, and joints from marrow** - This continues speaking about God's word as if it were a sword. Here the sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside of us that we can hide from God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **soul from spirit** - These are two different but closely related nonphysical parts of a human. The "soul" is what causes a person to be alive. The "spirit" is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God.
- **joints from marrow** - The "joint" is what holds two bones together. The "marrow" is the center part of the bone.
- **It is able to know** - This speaks about God's word as if it were a person who could know something. AT: "God's word exposes" (UDB) (See: [Personification](#))
- **the heart's thoughts and intentions** - This speaks about the heart as if it were the center of thought and emotion within a person. AT: "what a person is thinking and intends to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Nothing created is hidden before God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Nothing that God has created can hide from him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **everything is bare and open** - This speaks about all things as if they were a person standing bare, or a box that is open. AT: "everything is completely exposed" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bare and open** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that nothing is hidden from God. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **to the eyes of the one to whom we must give account** - God is spoken of as if he had eyes. AT: "to God, who will judge how we have lived" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 4:14-16

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> So we have a great high priest who ascended through the heavens when he returned to God's presence. He is Jesus, God's Son. So let us courageously say openly that we trust Jesus Christ. <sup>15</sup> Our high priest can indeed have mercy on us and encourage us, we who tend to sin easily, because Satan also tempted him to sin in every way that he tempts us to sin—but he did not sin. <sup>16</sup> So let us come boldly to Christ, who rules from heaven and does for us what we do not deserve, so that he might kindly help us and have mercy on us when we need him to do so.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us firmly hold to our beliefs. <sup>15</sup> For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. Instead, we have someone who has in all ways been tempted as we are, except that he is without sin. <sup>16</sup> Let us then go with confidence to the throne of grace, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need.

### translationWords:

- high priest
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- believe, believe in, belief
- tempt, temptation
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- confidence, confident
- throne
- grace, gracious
- receive
- mercy, merciful

### translationNotes:

- **who has passed through the heavens** - “who has entered where God is”
- **Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **let us firmly hold to our beliefs** - Belief and trust are spoken of as if they were objects that a person could grasp firmly. AT: “let us continue to believe confidently in him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy ... Instead, we have** - This double negative means that, in fact, Jesus does feel sympathy with people. AT: “we have a high priest who can feel sympathy ... Indeed, we have” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

- **who has in all ways been tempted as we are** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “who has endured temptation in every way that we have” or “whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he is without sin** - “he did not sin”
- **to the throne of grace** - “to God’s throne, where there is grace.” Here “throne” refers to God ruling as king. AT: “to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need** - Here “mercy” and “grace” are spoken of as if they were objects that can be given or can be found. AT: “God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 04 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 5:5-6, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

This chapter is a continuation of the teaching of the previous chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### High priest

Jesus needed to be a high priest in order to offer his life as a sacrifice for sin. The high priest was normally from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the ruling tribe, Judah. His right to be a priest came from the tradition of Melchizedek, who was a priest before the Levites came into existence. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Milk and solid food

This is an image used to describe maturity in Christ. It compares the immature Christian to a baby who is only able to drink milk. They are not mature enough to handle solid foods, which are the more complex teachings about Jesus. Instead, they have chosen not to grow and remain like a baby who only drinks milk, the simpler and more basic teachings about Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 05:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 5:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When God chooses a high priest, he selects a man from the people. This man must serve God for the people; he must give God gifts and sacrifice animals to him for the people's sins. <sup>2</sup> A high priest can be gentle with those who know little about God and with those who sin against him. This is because the high priest himself is weak with sin. <sup>3</sup> As a result, he also must sacrifice animals, because he sins just like the people do.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup> For every high priest, chosen from among people, is appointed to act on the behalf of people in the things concerning God, so that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins. <sup>2</sup> He can deal gently with the ignorant and the wayward because he himself also is surrounded with weakness. <sup>3</sup> Because of this, he also is required to offer sacrifices for his own sins, just as he does for the people's sins.

### translationWords:

- high priest
- appoint, appointed
- sacrifice, offering
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.
- **chosen from among people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom God chooses from among the people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **is appointed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God appoints" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to act on the behalf of people** - "to represent the people"
- **the ignorant and the wayward** - These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. AT: "those who are ignorant and wayward" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **the wayward** - people who behave in sinful ways
- **is surrounded with weakness** - The high priest's own weakness is spoken of as if it were a force that surrounded him. AT: "is spiritually weak" or "is weak against sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **weakness** - Here this refers to the desire to sin.
- **he also is required** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God also requires him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 5:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> But no one can honor himself by deciding to become the high priest. Instead, God chose each man to become a high priest, as he chose Aaron to be the first high priest. <sup>5</sup> Similarly, Christ also did not honor himself by becoming high priest. Instead, God the Father appointed him by saying to him what the Psalmist wrote in the scriptures:

“You are my son! Today I have declared that I am your father!”

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> And it is not for himself that anyone takes this honor. Instead, he is called by God, just as Aaron was. <sup>5</sup> In the same way, neither did Christ honor himself by making himself high priest. Instead, the one speaking to him said,

”You are my Son;  
today I have become your Father.”

### translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- call, calling, called, call out
- Aaron
- Christ, Messiah
- high priest
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This quotation is from the Psalms in the Old Testament.
- **takes this honor** - Honor is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could grasp in his hands. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **takes this honor** - The “honor” or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he is called by God, just as Aaron was** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God called him, just as he called Aaron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the one speaking to him said** - “God said to him”
- **You are my Son; today I have become your Father** - These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated this in [1:5](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Son ... Father** - These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 5:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> And he also said to Christ what the psalmist wrote in another scripture passage:

“You are a priest eternally in the way that Melchizedek was a priest.”

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> It is just as he also says in another place,

”You are a priest forever  
after the manner of Melchizedek.”

### translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [forever](#)
- [Melchizedek](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This prophecy is from a Psalm of David.
- **he also says** - To whom God is speaking can be stated clearly. AT: “he also says to Christ” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **in another place** - “in another place in the scriptures”
- **after the manner of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: “in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 5:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> In the days when Christ was living here in the world, he prayed to God and cried out loudly to him in tears. He asked God, who could save him from dying. And God listened to him, because Christ honored him and obeyed him. <sup>8</sup> Although Christ is God's own son, he learned to obey God by suffering and dying.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> During the days of his flesh, Christ offered up both prayers and requests with loud cries and tears to God, the one able to save him from death. He was heard because of his piety. <sup>8</sup> Even though he was a son, he learned obedience from the things that he suffered.

### translationWords:

- [flesh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)

### translationNotes:

- **During the days of his flesh** - Here “the days” stands for a period of time. And, “flesh” stand for Jesus’s earthly life. AT: “While he lived on earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **prayers and requests** - Both of these words mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **to save him from death** - Death is spoken of as if it were place that Christ could be kept from being forced to enter, or as a place from which he could be rescued. Either meaning fits here. The UDB chooses the first meaning. If possible, translate so as to allow both interpretations. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He was heard** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God heard him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **the things that he suffered** - The experiences of suffering are spoken of as if they were things. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)

- Hebrews 05 Translation Questions

## Hebrews 5:9-11

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> By accomplishing everything that God wanted him to do, he has now become fully able to save eternally all who obey him. <sup>10</sup> God has designated him to be our high priest in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest.

<sup>11</sup> I want to tell you much about the many ways in which Christ resembles Melchizedek, this is hard for me to explain to you because you find it so difficult to understand.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> He was made perfect and became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation. <sup>10</sup> He was designated by God as high priest after the manner of Melchizedek.

<sup>11</sup> We have much to say about Jesus, but it is hard to explain since you have become dull in hearing.

### translationWords:

- perfect
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- salvation
- high priest
- Melchizedek
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - In verse 11 the writer begins his third warning. He warns these believers that they are still not mature and encourages them to learn God's word so they can understand right from wrong.
- **He was made perfect** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God made him perfect" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **made perfect** - Here this means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.
- **became, for everyone who obeys him, the cause of eternal salvation** - The abstract noun "salvation" can be stated as a verb. AT: "now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **He was designated by God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God designated him" or "God appointed him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **after the manner of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

- **We have much to say** - Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. AT: “I have much to say” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **you have become dull in hearing** - The ability to understand and obey is spoken of as if it were the ability to listen. And the ability to listen is spoken of as if it were a metal tool that becomes dull with use. AT: “you have trouble understanding it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 5:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> You became Christians long ago. So by now you should be teaching God's truths to others. But you still need someone to teach you again the elementary truths of the words of God from the scriptures, starting from the beginning. You need those basic truths like babies need milk. You are not ready to learn more difficult things, things that are like the solid food that mature people need. <sup>13</sup> Remember that those who are still learning these elementary truths do not understand what God says about becoming righteous. Neither do they yet know right from wrong. They are just like babies who need milk! <sup>14</sup> But the more difficult spiritual truth is for people who know God better, just like solid food is for people who are adults. They can tell the difference between what is good and what is evil, because they have trained themselves by learning what is right and what is wrong.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> For though by this time you should be teachers, you still have need for someone to teach you the basic principles of God's messages. You need milk, not solid food! <sup>13</sup> For anyone who only takes milk is inexperienced with the message of righteousness, because he is still a baby. <sup>14</sup> But solid food is for adults. These are those who because of their maturity have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil.

### translationWords:

- teacher, Teacher
- law, principle
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

### translationNotes:

- **basic principles** - Here "principles" means a guideline or standard for decision-making. AT: "basic truths"
- **You need milk** - Teaching about God that is easy to understand is spoken of as if it were milk, the only food that infants can take. AT: "You have become like babies and can drink only milk" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **not solid food** - Teaching about God that is difficult to understand is spoken of as if it were solid food, suitable for adults. AT: "instead of solid food, which adults can eat" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **takes milk** - Here "takes" stands for "drinks." AT: "drinks milk" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **because he is still a baby** - This speaks of a believer who can understand only the simple teachings of the gospel as if he were a literal baby. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who because of their maturity have their understanding trained for distinguishing good from evil** - People trained to understand something are spoken of as if the ability to understand had been trained. AT: “who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 05 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 05 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The audience of this chapter is Christians. This will probably affect how one translates some of the difficult verses.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Abrahamic Covenant

God made a covenant with Abraham. In it, God promised to make his descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect them and to give them land of their own. This covenant is promised based on the character of God. (See: [covenant](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 06:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 6:1-3

### UDB:

1-3 So, we must not keep discussing what we first learned about Christ, things that all believers must learn at first. Some of these things are how to stop doing sinful deeds, those that lead to death, and how to start trusting in God. There are also important things we teach: various kinds of baptism, why we often pray while putting our hands on each other; and also about how God will raise us all from the dead and judge everyone in a way that will last forever. Indeed, we will discuss these things again later, if God gives us the chance to do it. But now we must discuss things that are harder to understand; these are things that will help us to trust in Christ in all times, no matter what happens.

### ULB:

6 <sup>1</sup> So then, let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity. Let us not lay again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith in God, <sup>2</sup> nor the foundation of teaching about baptisms, laying on of hands, the resurrection of the dead people, and eternal judgment. <sup>3</sup> We will also do this if God permits.

### translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- foundation, founded
- repent, repentance
- death, die, dead
- works, deeds, work, acts
- faith
- baptize, baptism
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- resurrection
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- judge, judgment

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer continues with what immature Hebrew believers need to do to become mature Christians. He reminds them of the foundational teachings.
- **let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity** - This speaks about the basic teachings as if they were the beginning of a journey and the mature teachings as if they were the end of a journey. AT: “let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Let us not lay again the foundation ... of faith in God** - Basic teachings are spoken of as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a foundation. AT: “Let us not repeat the basic teachings ... of faith in God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **dead works** - Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **nor the foundation of teaching ... eternal judgment** - Basic teachings are spoken of as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a foundation. AT: “nor the basic teachings ... eternal judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **laying on of hands** - This practice was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:4-6

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> I will explain why it is important to do this. Some people have at one time understood the message about Christ. They learned what it was like for God to forgive them and for Christ to love them, and they received gifts from the Holy Spirit. <sup>5</sup> They found for themselves that God's message is good, and they learned how God will work powerfully in the future. <sup>6</sup> But now, if these people reject Christ, no one will be able to persuade them to stop sinning and to trust in him again! That is because it is as though these people have nailed the Son of God to his cross again! They are causing people to despise Christ in front of others.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, who tasted the heavenly gift, who were sharers of the Holy Spirit, <sup>5</sup> and who tasted God's good word and the powers of the age to come, <sup>6</sup> but who then fell away—it is impossible to restore them again to repentance. This is because they crucify the Son of God for themselves again, and publicly shame him.

### translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- age
- repent, repentance
- crucify
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- mock, ridicule, scoff at

### translationNotes:

- **those who were once enlightened** - Understanding is spoken of as if it were illumination. AT: “those who once understood the message about Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who tasted the heavenly gift** - Experiencing salvation is spoken of as if it were tasting food. AT: “who experienced God's saving power” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who were sharers of the Holy Spirit** - The Holy Spirit, who comes to believers, is spoken of as if he were an object that people could share. AT: “who received the Holy Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who tasted God's good word** - Learning God's word is spoken of as if it were tasting food. AT: “who learned God's good word” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **the powers of the age to come** - This means the power of God when his kingdom is fully present in all the world. In this sense, “the powers” refer to God himself, who holds all power. AT: “learned how God will work powerfully in the future” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who then fell away** - Losing all faithfulness to God is spoken of as if it were a physical fall. AT: “who then stopped believing in God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **it is impossible to restore them again to repentance** - “it is impossible to bring them back to repent again”
- **they crucify the Son of God for themselves again** - When people turn away from God, it is as though they crucify Jesus again. AT: “it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Think about this: God has blessed land on which rain has frequently fallen and on which plants grow for the farmers. <sup>8</sup> But what will happen to believers who do not obey God is like what happens to land on which only thorns and thistles grow. Such land is worthless. It has become land that the farmer will curse and whose plants they will burn away.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> For the land that drinks in the rain that often comes on it, and that gives birth to the plants useful to those for whom the land was worked—this is the land that receives a blessing from God. <sup>8</sup> But if it bears thorns and thistles, it is worthless and is near to a curse. Its end is in burning.

### translationWords:

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [thorn, thistle](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the land that drinks in the rain** - Farmland that benefits from much rain is spoken of as if it were a person who drank in the rainwater. AT: “the land that absorbs the rain” (See: [Personification](#))
- **that gives birth to the plants** - Farmland that produces crops is spoken of as if it gave birth to them. AT: “that produces plants” (See: [Personification](#))
- **to those for whom the land was worked** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “to those for whom someone prepared the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the land that receives a blessing from God** - Rain and crops are seen as proof that God has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God’s blessing. (See: [Personification](#))
- **a blessing from God** - Here “blessing” means help from God, not spoken words.
- **is near to a curse** - This speaks of “curse” as if it were a place to which a person could draw near. AT: “is in danger of God cursing it” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Its end is in burning** - God will cause everything on that field to burn.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)

- Hebrews 06 General Notes
- **Hebrews 06 Translation Questions**

## Hebrews 6:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> You can see that I am warning you, dear friends, not to reject Christ. At the same time, I am certain that you are doing better than that. You are doing the things that are in conformity with the fact that God is saving you. <sup>10</sup> Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook all you have done for him; he will not overlook how you have loved and helped your fellow believers, and how you are still helping them.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> But we are convinced about better things concerning you, beloved ones, things that concern salvation, even though we speak like this. <sup>10</sup> For God is not so unjust that he would forget your work and the love that you have shown for his name, because you served the believers and still serve them.

### translationWords:

- beloved
- salvation
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- love
- name
- serve, service
- believer

### translationNotes:

- **we are convinced** - Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. AT: “I am convinced” or “I am certain” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **about better things concerning you** - This means they are doing better than those who have rejected God, disobeyed him, and now can no longer repent again so that God will forgive them (See: [6:4-6](#)). AT: “that you are doing better things than that”
- **things that concern salvation** - The abstract noun “salvation” can be stated as a verb. AT: “things that concern God saving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **For God is not so unjust that he would forget** - This double negative can mean that God in his justice will remember what good things his people have done. AT: “For God is just and therefore will certainly remember” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **his name** - God’s “name” is a metonym that stands for God himself. AT: “for him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> We greatly desire that each of you continue to show the same effort you are showing now, so that to the very end of your lives, you will be sure you will receive all that God promised to give you. <sup>12</sup> I do not want you to be lazy. Instead, I want you to do what other believers have done, those who are receiving what God promised them, because they trusted in him and were patient.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> And we greatly desire that each of you may show the same diligence to the end for the sake of full assurance of confidence. <sup>12</sup> This is so that you will not become lazy, but imitators of those who by faith and patience inherit the promises.

### translationWords:

- [confidence, confident](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [faith](#)
- [patient, patience](#)
- [promise](#)

### translationNotes:

- **we greatly desire** - Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. AT: “I greatly desire” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **diligence** - careful, hard work
- **to the end** - The implicit meaning can be stated explicitly. AT: “to the end of your lives” (See: [Explicit and Implicit Information](#))
- **for the sake of full assurance of confidence** - “in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you”
- **imitators** - An “imitator” is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.
- **inherit the promises** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. AT: “receive what God promised them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:13-15

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> When God promised to do great things for Abraham, there was no one greater than himself whom he could ask to force himself to do those things. So he asked himself. <sup>14</sup> Then he said to Abraham, “I will certainly bless you and I will certainly greatly increase the number of your descendants.” <sup>15</sup> So after Abraham patiently waited for God to do what he promised, God did for him what he had promised.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> For when God made his promise to Abraham, he swore by himself, since he could not swear by anyone greater. <sup>14</sup> He said, “I will certainly bless you, and I will greatly increase you.” <sup>15</sup> In this way, Abraham obtained what was promised after he had patiently waited.

### translationWords:

- [promise](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [patient, patience](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He said** - God said
- **I will greatly increase you** - Here “increase” stands for give descendants. AT: “I will give you many descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **what was promised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “what God promised him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:16-18

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Keep in mind that when people promise something, they ask a more important person to punish them if they do not do what they promise. This is how they often settle disputes. <sup>17</sup> So when God wanted to demonstrate very clearly to us who would receive what he had promised that he would not change what he had planned to do, he said that he would declare himself guilty if he did not do what he promised. <sup>18</sup> He did that to strongly encourage us, because he has done two things that cannot change: He promised to help us, and he told us that he would declare himself guilty if he did not help us. Now, God cannot lie. That is why we have trusted in him, just as he has encouraged us to do.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> For people swear by someone greater than themselves. At the end of each of their disputes, an oath serves as confirmation. <sup>17</sup> When God decided to show more clearly to the heirs of the promise the unchangeable quality of his purpose, he guaranteed it with an oath. <sup>18</sup> He did this so that by two unchangeable things—with which it is impossible for God to lie—we, who have fled for refuge, will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the confidence that has been placed before us.

### translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- confirm, confirmation
- heir
- encourage, encouragement
- confidence, confident

### translationNotes:

- **to the heirs of the promise** - The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. AT: “to those who would receive what he promised” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the unchangeable quality of his purpose** - “that his purpose would never change” or “that he would always do what he said he would do”
- **by two unchangeable things** - This means God’s promise and God’s oath. Neither of these can ever change.
- **with which it is impossible for God to lie** - This double negative can mean that God will tell the truth about this situation. AT: “about which God always tells the truth” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

- **we, who have fled for refuge** - Believers, who trust in God for him to protect them, are spoken of as if they were running to a safe place. AT: “we, who have trusted him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the confidence that has been placed before us** - Trust in God is spoken of as if faith were an object that could be presented to a person and that person could hold on to it. AT: “will continue to trust in God just has he encouraged us to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that has been placed before us** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God has placed before us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 6:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Yes, we confidently expect to receive what God has promised to do for us. It is as if we were a ship, whose anchor is holding us firmly in one place. The one we confidently expect to hold us is Jesus, because he has gone into God's very presence. This is why he is just like the high priests who go behind the curtain into the innermost part of the temple, where God is present. <sup>20</sup> Jesus went into God's presence ahead of us to allow us to enter in that same place with God, too. Jesus has become a high priest forever, in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> We have this confidence as a secure and reliable anchor of our souls, confidence that enters into the inner place behind the curtain. <sup>20</sup> Jesus entered into that place as a forerunner for us, having become a high priest forever after the manner of Melchizedek.

### translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- soul
- curtain
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- high priest
- forever
- Melchizedek

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having finished his third warning and encouragement to the believers, the writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.
- **as a secure and reliable anchor of our souls** - Just as an anchor keeps a boat from drifting in the water, Jesus keeps us secure in God's presence. AT: "that causes us to live securely in God's presence" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a secure and reliable anchor** - Here the words "secure" and "reliable" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the complete reliability of the anchor. AT: "a completely reliable anchor" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **confidence that enters into the inner place behind the curtain** - Confidence is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple. (See: [Personification](#))

- **the inner place** - This was the most holy place in the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **as a forerunner for us** - The fact that Jesus died and rose again, and that he is now with God the Father, indicate that we who believe in him will experience the same things. Jesus is spoken of here as if he were someone who runs ahead of us and that we are running after him. AT: "as one who goes before us" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **after the manner of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 06 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 06 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent all the lines of 7:17, 21, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### High priest

Jesus needed to be a high priest to offer his life as a sacrifice for sin. Jesus' role as high priest is explained in detail in this chapter. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)).

#### Melchizedek

The high priest was normally from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the ruling tribe, Judah. His right to be a priest came from the tradition of Melchizedek, who was a priest before the Levites came into existence. This passage will be difficult to understand if Genesis has not been translated first (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### New Covenant

The author mentions the New Covenant and discusses Jesus' relationship to it. (See: [new covenant](#))

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 07:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 7:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Now I will say more about this man Melchizedek. He was the king of the city of Salem and was also a priest of God, who rules the universe. He met Abraham and his men who were returning home from defeating the armies of the four kings. Melchizedek blessed Abraham. <sup>2</sup> Then Abraham gave to him one tenth of all the things he took after winning the battle. Now Melchizedek's name means first, "king who rules righteously," and, since Salem means "peace," his name also means "the king who rules peacefully." <sup>3</sup> The scriptures provide us with no record of Melchizedek's father, mother, or ancestors; nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died. It is as if he continues to be a priest forever. In this way, he is a little like the Son of God.

### ULB:

7 <sup>1</sup> It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. <sup>2</sup> It was to him that Abraham gave a tenth of everything. His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness." His other title is "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." <sup>3</sup> He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life. Instead, he resembles the Son of God, because he remains a priest forever.

### translationWords:

- Melchizedek
- king
- priest, priesthood
- God
- Most High
- Abraham, Abram
- slaughter
- bless, blessed, blessing
- tenth, tithe
- righteous, righteousness
- peace, peaceful
- ancestor, father, forefather
- life, live, living, alive
- Son of God, the Son, Son

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

- **Salem** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings** - This refers to when Abraham and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **It was to him** - “It was to Melchizedek”
- **king of righteousness ... king of peace** - “righteous king ... peaceful king”
- **He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life** - It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that all the writer means is that the Scriptures provide no information about Melchizedek’s ancestry, birth, or death.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:4-6

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> You can realize how great this man Melchizedek was from the fact that Abraham, our famous ancestor, gave him a tenth of the best things he took from the battle with the kings. <sup>5</sup> According to the laws God gave Moses, the descendants of Abraham's great-grandson Levi, who were priests, should take tithes from God's people who were their relatives, even though those people also were fellow descendants of Abraham. <sup>6</sup> But this man Melchizedek, who was not among the descendants of Levi, received a tenth of everything from Abraham. He also blessed Abraham, the man to whom God promised many descendants.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> See how great this man was. Our ancestor Abraham gave a tenth of the things that he had taken in battle. <sup>5</sup> On one hand, the sons of Levi who receive the priesthood have a command from the law to collect tithes from the people, that is, from their brothers, even though they, too, have come from Abraham's body. <sup>6</sup> But on the other hand, Melchizedek, whose descent was not traced from them, received tithes from Abraham, and blessed him, the one who had the promises.

### translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- tenth, tithe
- Levite, Levi
- command, to command, commandment
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- descendant, descended from

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer states that the priesthood of Melchizedek is better than Aaron's priesthood and then reminds them that the priesthood of Aaron did not make anything perfect.
- **this man was** - "Melchizedek was"
- **On one hand ... But on the other hand** - These phrases are used to compare two things. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison. Or you could leave out "On one hand" and translate "But on the other hand" simply as "But."
- **the sons of Levi who receive the priesthood** - The author says this because not all of Levi's sons became priests. AT: "the descendants of Levi who became priests" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))
- **from the people** - "from the people of Israel"

- **from their brothers** - Here “brothers” means they are all related to each other through Abraham. AT: “from their relatives”
- **they, too, have come from Abraham’s body** - This is a way of saying that they were descendants of Abraham. AT: “they, too, are descendants of Abraham” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **whose descent was not traced from them** - “who was not a descendant of Levi”
- **the one who had the promises** - The things that God promised to do for Abraham are spoken of as if they were objects that he could possess. AT: the one to whom God had spoken his promises” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:7-10

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Now everyone knows that the more important people bless the less important people, just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham. <sup>8</sup> In the case of the priests who are descendants of Levi, they are all men who will die one day, but even they received tithes. However, in the case of Melchizedek, who received a tenth of everything from Abraham—it is as if God testified that Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying. <sup>9</sup> And it was as though Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him—those who received tithes from the people—paid tithes to Melchizedek because their ancestor Abraham paid tithes to him. When Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek it was as though Levi and all the priests descended from him acknowledged that Melchizedek was greater Abraham. <sup>10</sup> This is true because we can say that Levi and his descendants were still in Abraham’s body when Melchizedek met Abraham.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> There is no denying that the lesser person is blessed by the greater person. <sup>8</sup> In this case, mortal men receive tithes, but in that case it is testified that he lives on. <sup>9</sup> And, in a manner of speaking, Levi, who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham, <sup>10</sup> because Levi was in the body of his ancestor when Melchizedek met Abraham.

### translationWords:

- **bless, blessed, blessing**
- **tenth, tithe**
- **testimony, testify**
- **Levite, Levi**
- **Abraham, Abram**

### translationNotes:

- **the lesser person is blessed by the greater person** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the more important person blesses the less important person” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **In this case ... in that case** - These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.
- **is testified that he lives on** - It is never explicitly written in scripture that Melchizedek dies. The author of Hebrews speaks of this absence of information about Melchizedek’s death in scripture as if it were a positive statement that he is still alive. This can be stated in active form. AT: “scripture shows that he lives on” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)

- **Levi ... was in the body of his ancestor** - Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> God gave the law to his people at the same time he gave regulations about the priests. So if the priests who were descended from Aaron and his ancestor Levi could have provided a way for God to forgive people for disobeying those laws, those priests would have been adequate. In that case, no other priest like Melchizedek would have been necessary. <sup>12</sup> But we know those priests were not adequate, because a new type of priest like Melchizedek has come. And since God has appointed a new type of priest, he also had to change the law.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Now if perfection were possible through the Levitical priesthood (for under it the people received the law), what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron? <sup>12</sup> For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed.

### translationWords:

- perfect
- Levite, Levi
- priest, priesthood
- receive
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Aaron

### translationNotes:

- **Now** - This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **what further need would there have been for another priest to arise after the manner of Melchizedek, and not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron?** - This question emphasizes that it was unexpected that priests come after the order of Melchizedek. AT: “no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **to arise** - “to come” or “to appear”
- **after the manner of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: “in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest”
- **not be considered to be after the manner of Aaron** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “not be after the manner of Aaron” or “who is not a priest like Aaron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **For when the priesthood is changed, the law must also be changed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> Jesus, the one about whom I am saying these things, is not a descendant of Levi. Instead, he came from the tribe of Judah, which never gave any person who served as priest. <sup>14</sup> The scriptures clearly state this. And in fact, Moses never said that any of Judah's descendants would become priests.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> For the one about whom these things are said belongs to another tribe, from which no one has ever served at the altar. <sup>14</sup> Now clearly, it is from Judah that our Lord was born, a tribe that Moses never mentioned concerning priests.

### translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

### translationNotes:

- **For the one** - This refers to Jesus.
- **about whom these things are said** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "about whom I am speaking" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Now** - This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **it is from Judah that our Lord was born** - The words "our Lord" refer to Jesus.
- **from Judah** - "from the tribe of Judah"

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Furthermore, we know that the priests descended from Levi were inadequate, since it is even more obvious that another priest has appeared who is like Melchizedek. <sup>16</sup> This priest is Jesus; he became a priest, but not because he fulfilled what God's law required about being a descendant of Levi. Instead, he has the kind of power that came from a life that nothing can destroy. <sup>17</sup> We know this since God confirmed it in the scripture passage in which he said to his Son,

“You are a priest eternally, just as Melchizedek was a priest.”

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> And what we say is clearer yet if another priest arises in the likeness of Melchizedek. <sup>16</sup> It was not on the basis of the law of fleshly descent that he became a priest, but instead on the basis of the power of an indestructible life. <sup>17</sup> For scripture witnesses about him:

”You are a priest forever  
after the manner of Melchizedek.”

### translationWords:

- priest, priesthood
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- like, likeness
- Melchizedek
- law, principle
- power, powers
- life, live, living, alive
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- witness, eyewitness
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This quote comes from a psalm of King David.
- **what we say is clearer yet** - “we can understand even more clearly.” Here “we” refers to the author and his audience. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **if another priest arises** - “if another priest comes”
- **in the likeness of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: “in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest”

- **on the basis of the law of fleshly descent** - The idea of human descent is spoken of as if it had only to do with the flesh of one's body. AT: "on the basis of the law about who his family is" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but instead on the basis of the power of an indestructible life** - The phrase "he became priest" is understood. AT: "but instead he became priest on the basis of the power of his life that will never end" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **For scripture witnesses about him** - This speaks about scripture as if it were a person who could witness about something. AT: "For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" (See: [Personification](#))
- **after the manner of Melchizedek** - This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. AT: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> God withdrew what he had first commanded about the priests because those priests are unable to make sinful people holy. <sup>19</sup> No one was able to become good by obeying the laws that God gave Moses. On the other hand, God gave us a better reason to have confidence in him, because he makes it possible for us to come near to him.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> For there was a cancellation of the former commandment because it was weak and useless. <sup>19</sup> For the law made nothing perfect. However, there is the introduction of a better confidence for the future through which we approach God.

### translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)

### translationNotes:

- **there was a cancellation of the former commandment** - "God made invalid the commandment from an earlier time"
- **the law made nothing perfect** - The law is spoken of as if it were a person who could act. (See: [Personification](#))
- **there is the introduction of a better confidence** - "God has given us a better reason for having confidence"
- **there is the introduction of a better confidence for the future through which we approach God** - Confidence for the future is spoken of as if it were an object through which a person must go in order to approach God. AT: "God gave us a better reason to have confidence in him, because he makes it possible for us to come near to him" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **we approach God** - Worshiping God and having his favor are spoken of as if they were the action of going near to him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Furthermore, when God appointed Christ as a priest, he solemnly declared it. When God appointed former priests, he did not do this. <sup>21</sup> But when he appointed Christ to be a priest, it was by these words that the Psalmist wrote in scripture:

”The Lord has solemnly declared  
—and he will not change his mind:  
‘You will be a priest forever!’”

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> And this did not happen without the taking of an oath. On one hand, those others become priests without any oath. <sup>21</sup> But on the other hand, this one, Jesus, became a priest with an oath sworn by the one who said to him,

”The Lord swore and will not change his mind:  
‘You are a priest forever.’”

### translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- priest, priesthood
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Lord
- mind
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This quote also comes from the same psalm of David as verse 17. (See: [7:17](#))
- **this did not happen without the taking of an oath** - The action of taking an oath is spoken of without saying who took that oath. However, it was God. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “this happened because God swore an oath” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))
- **with an oath sworn by the one who said to him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “because God swore an oath to him, saying” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Because of that, Jesus himself guarantees that the new covenant will be better than the old one.

<sup>23</sup> And formerly, priests could not keep serving as priests because they would always die. So there were many priests to take the place of the ones who died. <sup>24</sup> But because Jesus lives eternally, he will continue to be a high priest forever.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> By this also Jesus has given the guarantee of a better covenant. <sup>23</sup> On one hand, many become priests because by death they are kept from continuing on. <sup>24</sup> On the other hand, because Jesus remains forever, he has a permanent priesthood.

### translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [forever](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer then assures these Jewish believers that Christ has the better priesthood because he lives forever and the priests that descended from Aaron all died.
- **guarantee** - “assurance” or “certainty”
- **On one hand ... On the other hand** - These phrases are used to compares two things. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison. Or you could leave out the first “On one hand” and translate the second “On the other hand” simply as “But.”
- **by death they are kept from continuing on** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they eventually die and cannot continue on” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he has a permanent priesthood** - A priest’s work is spoken of as if it were an object that Jesus possessed. This can be worded avoiding the abstraction. AT: “he is a priest permanently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)

- Hebrews 07 General Notes
- **Hebrews 07 Translation Questions**

## Hebrews 7:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> So Jesus can completely and eternally save those who come to God, since he lives forever to plead with God to forgive them and keep them safe.

<sup>26</sup> Jesus is the kind of high priest that we need. He was holy, he did no wrong, and he was innocent. God has now separated him from living among sinners, and has now taken him up to the highest heaven.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Therefore he is also able to completely save those who approach God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them. <sup>26</sup> For such a high priest is suitable for us. He is sinless, blameless, pure, separated from sinners, and has become higher than the heavens.

### translationWords:

- [save, safe](#)
- [intercede, intercession](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [blameless](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Therefore** - You can make explicit what “Therefore” implies. AT: “Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **those who approach God through him** - “those who come to God because of what Jesus has done”
- **and has become higher than the heavens** - “and God has raised him up to the highest heavens.” The author speaks of possessing more honor and power than anyone else as if it were position that is up above all things. AT: “and God has given him more honor and power than anyone else” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 7:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> The Jewish high priests need to sacrifice animals day by day as well as year by year. They do this, firstly, to cover their own sins, and then to cover the sins of other people. But because Jesus never sinned, he does not need to do that. The only thing he needed to do to save people was to sacrifice himself once, and that is exactly what he did! <sup>28</sup> We need a high priest like Jesus, because the priests, who were appointed as commanded in the law, sinned like all humans sin. But God solemnly declared after he had given his laws to Moses that he would appoint his Son to be high priest. Now his Son, who is God the Son, Jesus, is forever the only perfect high priest.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> He does not need, unlike the high priests, to offer up daily sacrifices, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He did this once for all, when he offered himself. <sup>28</sup> For the law appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses. But the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son, who has been made perfect forever.

### translationWords:

- high priest
- sacrifice, offering
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- oath, swear, swear by
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- perfect
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here the words “He” and “himself” refer to Christ. The word “his” refers to earthly high priests.
- **the law appoints** - Here “the law” is a metonym that stands for God, who established the law. It was according to the law the Israelites appointed their priests. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **men who have weaknesses** - “men who are spiritually weak” or “men who are weak against sin”
- **the word of the oath, which came after the law, appointed a Son** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “word” is expressed as the verb “swore.” AT: “after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **the word of the oath** - The “oath” is personified and presented as if it were a person who spoke. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))
- **Son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **who has been made perfect** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “who has completely obeyed God and become mature” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 07 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 07 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hebrews 8 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 8:8-12, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

The author is still speaking about Jesus' role as the ultimate high priest. He also begins to speak about how the New Covenant is superior to the covenant God made with Moses. (See: [new covenant](#) and [covenant](#)).

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **New covenant**

The author mentions the New Covenant and discusses Jesus' relationship to it. Israel's relationship to the New Covenant is unclear and the subject of much debate.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **We**

The author begins to speak using the pronoun "we." It is uncertain who else this includes.

#### **Links:**

- [Hebrews 08:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 8:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> The most important part of everything that I have written is that we have a high priest who has sat down to rule in the place of greatest honor in heaven, beside God himself. <sup>2</sup> He serves in the sanctuary, that is, in the true place of worship in heaven. That is the true Sacred Tent, for the Lord set it up, not Moses.

### ULB:

**8** <sup>1</sup> Now the point of what we are saying is this: We have a high priest who has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens. <sup>2</sup> He is a servant in the holy place, the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up.

### translationWords:

- right hand
- throne
- majesty
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- servant, slave, slavery
- holy place, most holy place
- true, truth, come true
- tabernacle
- Lord

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer, having shown that Christ's priesthood is better than the earthly priesthood, shows that the earthly priesthood was a pattern of heavenly things. Christ has a superior ministry, a superior covenant.
- **Now** - This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **we are saying** - Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. AT: "I am saying" or "I am writing" (See: **Pronouns**)
- **sat down at the right hand** - Here "right hand" refers to a place of honor. AT: "he sat down in the place of honor." See how you translated this in **1:3**.
- **of the throne of the Majesty** - Here "Majesty" refers to God, and "throne" refers to God's rule as king. AT: "of God, who is our majestic king" (See: **Metonymy**)

- **the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up** - People built the earthly tabernacle out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, and they set it up in the manner of a tent. Here “true tabernacle” means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 8:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> God appoints every high priest to offer gifts and sacrifices for the people's sins. So since Christ became a high priest, he also had to offer something. <sup>4</sup> Since there are already priests who offer gifts as God's law requires, if Christ were now living on the earth, he would not be a high priest at all. <sup>5</sup> The priests in Jerusalem perform rituals that are only a copy of what Christ does in heaven. This is because when Moses was about to set up the Sacred Tent, God told him, "Be sure that you make everything according to what I showed you on Mount Sinai!"

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> For every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices. Therefore it is necessary to have something to offer. <sup>4</sup> Now if Christ were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are those who offer the gifts according to the law. <sup>5</sup> They serve in a tabernacle that is a copy and shadow of the heavenly things. It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to construct the tabernacle: God said, "See that you make everything according to the pattern that was shown to you on the mountain."

### translationWords:

- high priest
- appoint, appointed
- gift
- sacrifice, offering
- Christ, Messiah
- earth, earthly
- priest, priesthood
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- serve, service
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Moses
- tabernacle

### translationNotes:

- **For every high priest is appointed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "For God appoints every priest" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Now** - This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **according to the law** - "as God requires in the law"

- **a copy and shadow** - These words have similar meanings to emphasize that the tabernacle was merely an image of the real tabernacle in heaven. AT: “a vague image” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **shadow of the heavenly things** - The author speaks of the earthly temple, which is a copy of the heavenly temple, as if it were a shadow. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **It is just as Moses was warned by God when he was** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “It is just as God warned Moses when Moses was” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **was about to construct the tabernacle** - Moses did not construct the tabernacle himself. He ordered the people to construct it. AT: “was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **See** - “Make sure”
- **to the pattern** - “to the design”
- **that was shown to you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I showed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **on the mountain** - You can make explicit that “mountain” refers to Mount Sinai. AT: “on Mount Sinai” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 8:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> But now Christ serves in a much better way than the Jewish priests do. In the same way, the new covenant that he established between God and people is better than the old one. When he established the new covenant, he promised us better things than the laws that God gave Moses.

<sup>7</sup> God needed to make this new covenant, because the first covenant had not done everything well.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> But now Christ has received a much better ministry. It is just as he is also the mediator of a better covenant, which is based on better promises. <sup>7</sup> For if that first covenant had been faultless, there would have been no need for a second covenant.

**translationWords:**

- Christ, Messiah
- minister, ministry
- mediator
- covenant
- promise

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - This section begins to show that the new covenant is better than the old covenant with Israel and Judah.
- **Christ has received** - “God has given Christ”
- **a much better ministry. It is just as he is also the mediator of a better covenant** - “a much better ministry, just as Christ is the mediator of a better covenant”
- **mediator of a better covenant** - This means Christ caused a better covenant between God and humans to exist.
- **which is based on better promises** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “It was this covenant that God made based on better promises” or “God promised better things when he made this covenant” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **first covenant ... second covenant** - The words “first” and “second” are ordinal numbers. AT: “old covenant ... new covenant” (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)
- **had been faultless** - “had been perfect”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 8:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Because God declared that the Israelites were guilty of not obeying the first covenant, he wanted a new covenant. This is what a prophet wrote about that:

”The Lord says, ‘Listen! There will soon be a time when I will make a new covenant with the people of Israel and the people of Judah.

<sup>9</sup> That covenant will not be like the covenant that I made with their ancestors when I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child.

They did not continue to obey my covenant, so I let them alone,’ says the Lord.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> For when God found fault with the people, he said,

”See, the days are coming—says the Lord—when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah.

<sup>9</sup> It will not be like the covenant that I made with their ancestors on the day that I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt.

For they did not continue in my covenant, and I disregarded them—says the Lord.

**translationWords:**

- God
- biblical time: day
- new covenant
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Egypt, Egyptian

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - In this quotation the prophet Jeremiah foretold of a new covenant that God would make.
- **with the people** - “with the people of Israel”
- **See** - “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **the days are coming** - The future is spoken of as if it were moving toward the speaker. AT: “there will be a time” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the house of Israel and with the house of Judah** - The people of Israel and Judah are spoken of as if they were houses. AT: “the people of Israel and with the people of Judah” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt** - This metaphor represents God’s great love and concern. AT: “I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they did not continue in my covenant** - To obey God’s covenant is spoken of as if one were to continue in it. AT: “they did not obey my covenant” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 8:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> 'This is the covenant that I will make with the Israelites,  
 after the first covenant has ended,' says the Lord:  
 'I will enable them to understand my laws,  
 and I will enable them to obey them sincerely from their hearts.  
 I will be their God, and they will be my people.'

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel  
 after those days—says the Lord.  
 I will put my laws into their minds,  
 and I will also write them on their hearts.  
 I will be their God,  
 and they will be my people.

**translationWords:**

- covenant
- house
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- biblical time: day
- Lord
- law, principle
- heart
- God
- people of God, my people

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.
- **the house of Israel** - The people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a house. AT: “the people of Israel” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **after those days** - “after that time”

- **I will put my laws into their minds** - God's requirements are spoken of as if they were objects that could be placed somewhere. People's ability to think is spoken of as if it were a place. AT: "I will enable them to understand my laws" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will also write them on their hearts** - People's hearts, imagined to be the center of their loyalty to God, are spoken of as if they were a page that could be written on. AT: "I will also enable them to obey my laws sincerely" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will be their God** - "I will be the God they worship"
- **they will be my people** - "they will be the people for whom I care"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 8:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> No one will need to teach a fellow citizen

or tell his fellow kinsmen, ‘You acknowledge that the Lord is God,’  
because all my people will acknowledge me.

Everyone among my people, from the least important to the most important,  
will know me.

<sup>12</sup> I will mercifully forgive them for the wicked things they have done.  
I will no longer consider that they are guilty for their sins.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> They will not teach each one his neighbor  
and each one his brother, saying, ‘Know the Lord.’  
For all will know me,  
from the least to the greatest of them.

<sup>12</sup> For I will be merciful to their acts of unrighteousness,  
and I will not remember their sins any longer.”

**translationWords:**

- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- neighbor
- brother
- know, knowledge, make known
- Lord
- mercy, merciful
- unrighteous, unrighteousness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.
- **They will not teach each one his neighbor and each one his brother, saying, ‘Know the Lord.’** - This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “They will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

- **neighbor ... brother** - Both of these refer to fellow Israelites. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Know the Lord ... all will know me** - “Know” here stands for acknowledge. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to their acts of unrighteousness** - This stands for the people who committed these unrighteous acts. AT: “to those who did unrighteous acts” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will not remember their sins any longer** - Here “remember” stands for “think about.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 8:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Since God said that he was making a new covenant, we know that he considered that the first covenant was no longer in use, and that it would soon disappear.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> By saying “new,” he has made the first covenant old. And what has become outdated and old is near to disappearing.

**translationWords:**

- [covenant](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **is near to disappearing** - “has almost disappeared” or “will soon disappear”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 08 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 08 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter discusses how Jesus is superior to the Temple and its religious system of regulations. This chapter will be difficult to understand if the first five books of the Old Testament have not yet been translated.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Will

A will is a legal document that declares what will happen to a person's property after they die.

#### Blood

Blood played an important role in the Mosaic and New Covenants. In the Mosaic Covenant, it was the blood of the sacrifices which was significant. In the New Covenant, it is the blood of Jesus that is much more important by comparison. (See: [new covenant](#) and [covenant](#))

#### Return of Christ

The purpose of the return of Christ is to ultimately redeem the world. (See: [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### First covenant

This is a reference to the covenant made with Moses. Although it is not the first covenant recorded in scripture, it was the first covenant that God made with the people of Israel, so it was earlier than the new covenant made through Jesus Christ. The translator may wish to translate “the first covenant” as “the earlier covenant.”

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 09:1-2](#)

## Hebrews 9:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> In the first covenant God regulated how people of Israel should worship, and he told them to make a place to worship him. <sup>2</sup> The sanctuary that the Israelites set up was the Sacred Tent. In its outer room there were the lampstand and the table on which they put the bread on display before God. That room was called the holy place.

### ULB:

9 <sup>1</sup> Now even the first covenant had regulations for worship and an earthly sanctuary. <sup>2</sup> For a tabernacle was prepared. The first room, in which were the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence, was called the holy place.

### translationWords:

- covenant
- worship
- earth, earthly
- sanctuary
- tabernacle
- lampstand
- bread
- holy place, most holy place

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer makes clear to these Jewish believers that the laws and the tabernacle of the old covenant were only pictures of the better, new covenant.
- **Now** - This word marks a new part of the teaching.
- **first covenant** - Translate this as you did in 8:7.
- **had regulations** - “had detailed instructions” or “had rules”
- **For** - The author is continuing the discussion from 8:7.
- **a tabernacle was prepared** - A tabernacle was constructed and made ready for use. This idea can be stated in active form. AT: “the Israelites prepared a tabernacle” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence** - These objects are all accompanied by the definite article “the,” because the author assumes that his readers already know about these things.

- **bread of the presence** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “presence” is expressed as the verb “display” or “present.” AT: “bread on display before God” (UDB) or “bread the priests presented to God” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Behind the curtain on one side of the holy place there was another room. That was called the very holy place. <sup>4</sup> It had an altar covered with gold for burning incense. It also had the sacred chest. All its sides were covered with gold. In it was the golden pot which contained pieces of the food they called manna. In the chest there was also Aaron's walking stick that had budded to prove that he was God's true priest. In the chest were also the stone tablets on which God had written the Ten Commandments. <sup>5</sup> On top of the chest were figures of winged creatures that symbolized God's glory. Their wings overshadowed the sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people. I cannot now write about these things in detail.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Behind the second curtain was another room, called the most holy place. <sup>4</sup> It had a golden altar for incense. It also had the ark of the covenant, which was completely overlaid with gold. Inside it was a golden jar holding the manna, Aaron's rod that budded, and the tablets of the covenant. <sup>5</sup> Above the ark of the covenant, glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid, which we cannot now talk about in detail.

### translationWords:

- holy place, most holy place
- gold
- altar of incense
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- manna
- Aaron
- rod
- covenant
- glory, glorious
- cherubim, cherub
- atonement lid

### translationNotes:

- **Behind the second curtain** - The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the "second curtain" was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."
- **second** - This is the ordinal word for number two. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Inside it** - "Inside the ark of the covenant"

- **Aaron's rod that budded** - This refers to when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron's rod bud. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **budded** - "flowered" or "sprouted" or "grew and developed"
- **tablets of the covenant** - Here "tablets" are flat pieces of stone that had writing on them. This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.
- **cherubim overshadowed** - When the Israelites were making the ark of the covenant, God commanded them to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant. Here they are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant. AT: "the cherubim with their wings covered"
- **cherubim** - Here "cherubim" means figures of two cherubim. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **which we cannot** - Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. AT: "which I cannot" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> After they have arranged all these things in this way, the Jewish priests habitually go into the outer room of the tent to do their tasks. <sup>7</sup> But into the inner room only the high priest goes once a year. He always takes the blood of animals that they have slaughtered. He offers the blood to God for his own sins and for the sins that the other Israelites have committed. This includes the sins they committed but they did not know they were committing sins.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> After these things were prepared, the priests always entered the outer room of the tabernacle to perform their services. <sup>7</sup> But only the high priest entered the second room once each year, and not without blood that he offered for himself and for the people's unintentional sins.

### translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [biblical time: year](#)
- [blood](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

### translationNotes:

- **After these things were prepared** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "After the priests prepared these things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and not without blood** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: "and he always brought blood" (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **blood** - This is the blood of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> By those things the Holy Spirit indicated that God did not reveal the way for ordinary people to enter into the inner room, the very holy place, while the outer room still existed. In a similar way, he did not reveal the way for ordinary people to enter the presence of God while the Jews offered sacrifices in the old way. <sup>9</sup> This was a symbol for the time in which we are now living. The gifts and sacrifices offered in the Sacred Tent cannot make a person always know right from wrong or always do right from our hearts and in a way that he pleases God. <sup>10</sup> Those rules about what to eat and drink, and about what to wash—all those rules are no longer any good because God has made a new covenant with us. This new covenant is a much better system.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> The Holy Spirit showed that the way into the most holy place was not yet revealed as long as the first tabernacle was still standing. <sup>9</sup> This was an illustration for the present time. Both the gifts and sacrifices that are now being offered are not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience. <sup>10</sup> They are only concerned with food and drink and various sorts of ceremonial washings. These were all regulations for the flesh that were provided until the new order would be created.

### translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- holy place, most holy place
- reveal, revelation
- tabernacle
- gift
- sacrifice, offering
- perfect
- conscience
- flesh

### translationNotes:

- **the way into the most holy place was not yet revealed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God had not yet revealed the way into the most holy place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the most holy place** - Possible meanings are 1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth or 2) God's presence in heaven.
- **the first tabernacle was still standing** - Possible meanings are 1) "the outer room of the tabernacle was still standing" or 2) "the earthly tabernacle and the sacrificial system still existed." (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **This was an illustration** - “This was a picture” or “This was a symbol”
- **for the present time** - “for now”
- **that are now being offered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the priests now offer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **are not able to perfect the worshiper’s conscience** - The writer speaks of a person’s conscience as if it were an object that could be made better and better until it was without fault. A person’s conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty. AT: “are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the worshiper’s conscience** - The writer appears to refer to only one worshiper, but he means all those who came to worship God at the tabernacle. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **regulations for the flesh** - Here “flesh” refers to the physical body. AT: “rules for the physical body” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **These were all regulations for the flesh that were provided** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God provided all these regulations for the flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **that were provided until the new order would be created** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God provided until he created the new order” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **new order** - “new covenant” (UDB)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> But when Christ came as our high priest, he brought the good things that we have now. Then he went into God's presence in heaven, which is like the Sacred Tent, but it is not part of the world that God created. It is better than the tent Moses set up here on earth because it is perfect. <sup>12</sup> When a high priest goes into the inner room in the tent each year, he takes goats' blood and calves' blood to offer as a sacrifice. But Christ did not do that. It was as though he went into that very holy place only once because he gave his own blood on the cross, just one time. By doing that, he redeemed us forever, because his blood flowed from himself.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Christ came as a high priest of the good things that have come. He went through the greater and more perfect tabernacle that was not made by human hands, one not belonging to this created world.[1]Other versions read, *Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come.* <sup>12</sup> It was not by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood that he entered into the most holy place once for all and secured our eternal redemption.

### translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- high priest
- perfect
- tabernacle
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- create, creation, Creator
- blood
- goat, kid
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- holy place, most holy place
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- redeem, redemption, redeemer

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having described the service of the tabernacle under God's law, the writer makes clear that Christ's service under the new covenant is better because it is sealed with his blood. It is better also because Christ has entered the true "tabernacle," that is, God's own presence in heaven, instead of entering, as other high priests, into the earthly tabernacle, which was only an imperfect copy.

- **good things** - This does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.
- **the greater and more perfect tabernacle** - This means the heavenly tent or tabernacle is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.
- **that was not made by human hands** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that humans hands had not made” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **human hands** - Here “hands” refers to the whole person. AT: “humans” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **most holy place** - God’s presence in heaven is spoken of as if it were the most holy place, the innermost room in the tabernacle. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 9:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> The priests sprinkle on people goats' blood and bulls' blood and the water that has been filtered through the ashes of a red heifer that they have completely burned. By performing that ritual, they then say that God will now accept that the people should worship him. <sup>14</sup> If all that is true, then it became even more true when Christ, who had never sinned, sacrificed himself to God—he did this by the power of God's eternal Spirit. Because he sacrificed himself, God now forgives us for having sinned, for having done things that would have made us die forever. Now it is as though we had never sinned; now we can worship the true God.

<sup>15</sup> By dying for us, Christ made for God a new covenant with us. We were trying to please God by means of the first covenant, but we were still guilty of having sinned. When he died, he freed us from having to die for our own sins. As a result, all of us whom God has called to know him will receive what he has promised to give us forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> For if the blood of goats and bulls and the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have become unclean sets them apart to God for the cleansing of their flesh, <sup>14</sup> how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God? <sup>15</sup> For this reason, he is the mediator of a new covenant. This is so that, since a death has taken place to free those under the first covenant from their sins, those who are called will receive the promise of an eternal inheritance.

**translationWords:**

- heifer
- unclean
- set apart
- clean, cleanse
- flesh
- blemish
- conscience
- works, deeds, work, acts
- serve, service
- life, live, living, alive
- mediator
- new covenant
- free, freedom, liberty
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- call, calling, called, call out

- [promise](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

#### translationNotes:

- **sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have become unclean** - The priest would drop small amounts of the ashes on the unclean people.
- **for the cleansing of their flesh** - Here "flesh" refers to the entire body. AT: "for the cleansing of their bodies" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **how much more will the blood of Christ ... cleanse our conscience from dead works to serve the living God?** - The author uses this question to emphasize that Christ's sacrifice was the most powerful. AT: "then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself without blemish to God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the blood of Christ** - The "blood" of Christ stands for his death. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **cleanse our conscience** - Here "conscience" refers to a person's feeling of guilt. Because Jesus sacrificed himself, believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because he has forgiven them. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **blemish** - This is a small sin or moral fault spoken of here as if it were a small, unusual spot or defect on Christ's body. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **cleanse** - Here "cleanse" stands for the action of relieving our consciences from guilt for the sins we have committed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **dead works** - Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For this reason** - "As a result" or "Because of this"
- **he is the mediator of a new covenant** - This means Christ caused the new covenant between God and humans to exist.
- **first covenant** - Translate this as you did in [8:7](#).
- **those who are called** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "those whom God has chosen to be his children" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> A covenant is like a will. In the case of a will, in order to put its provisions into effect, someone must prove that the one who made it has died. <sup>17</sup> A will goes into effect only when the one who makes the will has died. It is not in effect when the one who made it is still alive.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> For where there is a will, the death of the person who made it must be proved. <sup>17</sup> For a will is only in force when there has been a death, because it has no force while the one who made it is still alive.

### translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)

### translationNotes:

- **will** - a legal document in which a person states who should receive his possessions when he himself dies
- **the death of the person who made it must be proved** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> And so God put the first covenant into effect only by means of animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them. <sup>19</sup> After Moses had declared to all the Israelites everything that God commanded in the laws that God gave him, he took calves' and goats' blood mixed with water. He dipped into this blood scarlet wool that he tied around a sprig of hyssop. Then he sprinkled with some of the blood the scroll itself containing God's laws. Then he sprinkled more of that blood on all the people. <sup>20</sup> He said to them, "This is the blood that brings into effect the covenant that God commanded that you obey."

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> So not even the first covenant was established without blood. <sup>19</sup> For when Moses had given every command in the law to all the people, he took the blood of the calves and the goats, with water, red wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the people. <sup>20</sup> Then he said, "This is the blood of the covenant that God has commanded for you."

### translationWords:

- covenant
- blood
- Moses
- command, to command, commandment
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- goat, kid
- scroll
- command, to command, commandment

### translationNotes:

- **So not even the first covenant was established without blood** - This can be stated in active and positive form. AT: "So God established even the first covenant with blood" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Double Negatives](#))
- **first covenant** - Translate this as you did in [8:7](#).
- **blood** - The death of animals sacrificed to God is spoken of as if it were nothing but blood. AT: "the death of animals sacrificed to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **took the blood ... with water ... and sprinkled ... the scroll ... and all the people** - The priest dipped the hyssop in the blood and the water and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the people. Sprinkling was a symbolic

action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

- **hyssop** - a woody shrub with flowers in summer, used in ceremonial sprinkling
- **the blood of the covenant** - Here "blood" refers to the death of the animals sacrificed to carry out the covenant's requirements. AT: "the blood that brings into effect the covenant" (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> Likewise, he sprinkled that blood on the Sacred Tent and on every object that they used in working there. <sup>22</sup> It was by sprinkling blood that they cleansed almost everything. That was what was stated in God's laws. If blood does not flow when they sacrifice an animal, God does not forgive the sins of those people.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> In the same manner, he sprinkled the blood on the tabernacle and all the containers used in the service. <sup>22</sup> And according to the law, almost everything is cleansed with blood. Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

### translationWords:

- blood
- tabernacle
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- clean, cleanse
- bloodshed
- forgive, forgiveness

### translationNotes:

- **he sprinkled** - "Moses sprinkled"
- **sprinkled** - Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [9:19](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **all the containers used in the service** - A container is an object that can hold things. Here it may refer to any kind of utensil or tool. AT: "all the utensils used in the the service"
- **used in the service** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the priests used in their work" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **almost everything is cleansed with blood** - Making something acceptable to God is spoken of as if it were cleansing that thing. This idea can be stated in active form. AT: "the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **blood** - Here the animal "blood" is talking about the animal's death. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness** - Here "shedding of blood" refers to something dying as a sacrifice to God. This double negative can mean that all forgiveness comes through the shedding of blood. AT: "Forgiveness only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

- **forgiveness** - You can state explicitly the implied meaning. AT: “forgiveness of the sins of the people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> So by animal sacrifices it was necessary for the priests to cleanse the things that symbolized what Christ does in heaven. But God has to cleanse the things in heaven by means of much better sacrifices than those. <sup>24</sup> Christ did not enter the very holy place that humans made, which only represented the true very holy place. Instead, he entered heaven itself, in order to now be in God's presence to plead with God for us.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Therefore it was necessary that the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices. However, the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices. <sup>24</sup> For Christ did not enter into the most holy place made with hands, which is only a copy of the true one. Instead he entered into heaven itself, to appear now in God's presence for us.

### translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- clean, cleanse
- sacrifice, offering
- Christ, Messiah
- holy place, most holy place
- true, truth, come true
- God

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer emphasizes that Christ (now in heaven interceding for us) had to die only once for sins and that he will return to earth a second time.
- **the copies of the things in heaven should be cleansed with these animal sacrifices** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the priests should use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices** - That is, better than the sacrifices used to cleanse the earthly copies. This can be stated in active form. AT: "as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **made with hands** - Here "hands" refers to humans. AT: ", which humans made and" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **of the true one** - "of the true most holy place"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> The high priest enters the very holy place once every year, taking blood that is not his own, to offer it as a sacrifice. But when Christ entered heaven, it was not in order to offer himself repeatedly like that. <sup>26</sup> If that were so, he would have needed to suffer and shed his blood repeatedly since the time when God created the world. But instead, in this final age, Christ has appeared once so that by sacrificing himself, God will forgive all our sins and will not condemn us any more because we have sinned.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> He did not go there in order to offer himself many times, as does the high priest, who enters the most holy place year by year with the blood of another. <sup>26</sup> If that had been the case, then it would have been necessary for him to suffer many times since the world's foundation. But now it is just one time at the end of the ages that he has been revealed to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

### translationWords:

- high priest
- holy place, most holy place
- biblical time: year
- blood
- suffer, suffering
- foundation, founded
- age
- reveal, revelation
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sacrifice, offering

### translationNotes:

- **He did not go there** - "He did not enter heaven" (UDB)
- **year by year** - "every year" or "each year"
- **with the blood of another** - This means with the blood of an animal victim, not with his own blood.
- **If that had been the case** - "If he had had to offer himself often"
- **since the world's foundation** - The creation of the world is spoken of as if the world were a building and the foundation was the first part to be constructed. AT: "since God began to create the world" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **he has been revealed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has revealed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself** - This speaks about sin as if it were an object that a person could put away. AT: “to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 9:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> All people must die once, and after that God will judge them for their sins. <sup>28</sup> Likewise, when Christ died, God offered him once to be a sacrifice, to punish him in the place of the many people who had sinned. He will come to earth a second time, not in order to sacrifice himself again for those who have sinned, but in order to save us who wait for him and expect him to come.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> Every person is destined to die once, and after that comes judgment. <sup>28</sup> In the same way, Christ also, who was offered once to take away the sins of many, will appear a second time, not to deal with sin, but for the salvation of those who are waiting patiently for him.

### translationWords:

- [destiny, destine, destined](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [patient, patience](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Christ also, who was offered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Christ also, who offered himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to take away the sins** - The act of making us innocent rather than guilty for our sins is spoken of as if our sins were physical objects that Christ could carry away from us. AT: “so that God would forgive the sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the sins** - Here “sins” mean the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 09 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 09 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 10:5-7, 6-17, 37-38, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

This chapter discusses how life as a Christian is superior to life as a Jew under the law of Moses and how the sacrifice of Jesus was superior to the sacrifices offered in the Temple. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God's judgment and reward

Holy living is important for Christians. God will hold people accountable for how they lived their Christian life. Even though there will not be eternal condemnation for Christians, ungodly actions do and will have consequences. In addition, faithful living will be rewarded. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#) and [reward](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins”

The sacrifices themselves had no redeeming power. They were effective because they were a display of faith, which was credited to the person offering the sacrifice. It was ultimately the sacrifice of Jesus which then makes these sacrifices “take away sins.” In turn, God does not want sacrifices offered devoid of faith. (See: [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#) and [faith](#))

#### “The covenant that I will make”

It is unclear whether this prophecy is being fulfilled when the author is speaking or whether it is still future. The translator should try to avoid making a claim about the time this covenant begins. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [covenant](#))

### Links:

- [Hebrews 10:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 10:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> The law does not show very well the good things that God will give us later. The law is like a shadow of something else. If people come to worship God by offering the same kinds of sacrifices every year, they can never become perfect. <sup>2</sup> If God had removed the guilt of those who brought these sacrifices, they would not feel that they were still guilty. So they would certainly have stopped offering those sacrifices! <sup>3</sup> But rather, the fact that they offer those sacrifices each year reminds them that they are still guilty for their sins. <sup>4</sup> So we know that even if we offer animals such as bulls or goats to God, even if he sees their blood flow, that will not stop us from being guilty.

### ULB:

**10** <sup>1</sup> For the law is only a shadow of the good things to come, not the real forms of those things themselves. Those who approach God can never be made perfect by the same sacrifices that the priests continually bring year after year. <sup>2</sup> Or else would not those sacrifices have ceased to be offered? In that case, if they had been cleansed once and for all, the worshipers would have no longer been aware of sin. <sup>3</sup> But with those sacrifices there is a reminder of sins year after year. <sup>4</sup> For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

### translationWords:

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- shadow
- good, goodness
- God
- perfect
- sacrifice, offering
- priest, priesthood
- clean, cleanse
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sign, proof, reminder
- blood

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer shows the weakness of the law and its sacrifices, why God gave the law, and the perfection of the new priesthood and Christ's sacrifice.
- **the law is only a shadow of the good things to come** - This speaks about the law as if it were a shadow. The author means the law was not the good things that God had promised. It only hinted at the good things that God was going to do. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **not the real forms of those things themselves** - “not the real things themselves”
- **year after year** - “every year”
- **would not those sacrifices have ceased to be offered?** - The author uses a question to state that the sacrifices were limited in their power. This can be stated in active form. AT: “they would have ceased offering those sacrifices.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **ceased** - “stopped”
- **In that case** - “In that situation”
- **if they had been cleansed** - People’s sins are spoken of as if they could be physically washed away. This can be stated in active form. AT: “if God had already forgiven their sins” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **no longer been aware** - “would have known that they were no longer guilty of sin”
- **For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins** - Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that animal blood could sweep away as it flowed. AT: “For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the blood of bulls and goats** - Here “blood” refers to these animals dying as sacrifices to God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> That is why, as Christ was coming into the world, he said to his Father,

”It is not sacrifices and offerings that you have wanted,  
but you have prepared for me a body to offer.

<sup>6</sup> Animals that completely burn up when people offer them to you, these  
animals have not pleased you,  
and neither do other sacrifices please you.

<sup>7</sup> Because of this, I said, ’My God, listen!  
I have come here in order to do what you want me to do,  
just as they have written about me in the scriptures.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> When Christ came into the world, he said,

”It was neither sacrifices nor offerings that you desired.  
Instead, it is a body that you have prepared for me.

<sup>6</sup> In neither whole burnt offerings nor sacrifices for sin did you take pleasure.

<sup>7</sup> Then I said, ‘See, here I am, as it is written about me in the scroll, to do your will.”

**translationWords:**

- Christ, Messiah
- world, worldly
- sacrifice, offering
- body
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- written
- scroll
- will of God

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Christ's words when he was on earth were foretold in this quotation from a psalm of David.
- **that you desired** - Here "you" is singular and refers to God. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **prepared** - "made ready"
- **Then I said** - Here "I" refers to Christ.
- **as it is written about me in the scroll** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "as the prophets wrote about me in the scroll" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the scroll** - This means the scriptures or the holy writings.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 10:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> First Christ said, “It is not sacrifices and offerings and animals that the priests have completely burned up and other offerings to atone for those who have sinned that you have really wanted. They have not pleased you.” He said that even though those things were offered according to the laws that God gave Moses! <sup>9</sup> Then, concerning his offering himself as a sacrifice to atone for people’s sin, he said, “Listen! I have come here to do what you want me to do!” Thus Christ got rid of the first way of atoning for sin, in order to establish the second way of atoning for sin. <sup>10</sup> Because Jesus Christ did what God wanted him to do, God set us apart for himself. This happened when Jesus Christ offered his own body once as a sacrifice, a sacrifice that he will never need to repeat.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> First he said, “It was neither sacrifices, nor offerings, nor whole burnt offerings, nor sacrifices for sin that you desired. Nor did you take pleasure in them.” These are sacrifices that are offered according to the law. <sup>9</sup> Then he said, “See, here I am to do your will.” He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice. <sup>10</sup> And by that will, we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

### translationWords:

- sacrifice, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- will of God
- sanctify, sanctification
- body
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Though changing the wording slightly, the author repeats these quotations from a psalm of David for emphasis.
- **sacrifices ... offerings ... whole burnt offerings ... sacrifices for sin** - Translate these words as you did in 10:5-6.
- **that are offered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that priests offer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **See** - “Look” or “Listen”

- **takes away the first practice** - The abstract noun “practice” here refers to a way of atoning for sins. Stopping doing it is spoken of as if it were an object that could be taken away. AT: “stops atoning for sins the first way” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **first practice ... the second practice** - The words “first” and “second” are ordinal numbers. AT: “old practice ... the new practice” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **in order to establish the second practice** - Starting the second way of atoning for sins is spoken of as establishing that practice. AT: “in order to atone for sins the second way” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **we have been sanctified** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has sanctified us” or “God has dedicated us to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ** - The abstract noun “offering” can be expressed with the verb “offer” or “sacrifice.” AT: “when Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice” or “because Jesus Christ sacrificed his body” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 10:11-14

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> As every priest stands daily in front of the altar, he performs rituals and offers the same kind of sacrifices that could never remove the guilt for anyone's sins. <sup>12</sup> But Christ offered a sacrifice that will be enough forever, and he offered it only one time! After that, he sat down to rule beside God in the place of highest honor. <sup>13</sup> From now on, he is waiting for God to completely defeat all his enemies. <sup>14</sup> By offering himself once as the sacrifice for sin, he perfected forever those in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> On the one hand, every priest stands day by day to serve God. He is always offering the same sacrifices, although they can never take away sins. <sup>12</sup> On the other hand, Christ offered one sacrifice for sins forever, he sat down at the right hand of God. <sup>13</sup> He is waiting until his enemies are made a stool for his feet. <sup>14</sup> For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are being sanctified.

### translationWords:

- priest, priesthood
- serve, service
- God
- sacrifice, offering
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Christ, Messiah
- forever
- right hand
- adversary, enemy
- footstool
- perfect
- sanctify, sanctification

### translationNotes:

- **On the one hand ... On the other hand** - These phrases are used to compare two things. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison. Or you could leave out "On the one hand" and translate "On the other hand" simply as "But."
- **day by day** - "day after day" or "everyday"
- **can never take away sins** - This speaks of "sins" as if they are an object that a person can take away. AT: "can never cause God to forgive sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **he sat down at the right hand of God** - Here “right hand” refers to a place of honor. AT: “he sat down in the place of honor next to God.” See how you translated this in [1:3](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **until his enemies are made a stool for his feet** - The humiliation of Christ’s enemies is spoken of as if they were made a place for him to rest his feet. This can be stated in active form. AT: “until God humiliates Christ’s enemies and they become like a stool for his feet” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **those who are being sanctified** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whom God is sanctifying” or “those whom God has dedicated to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> The Holy Spirit also confirms to us that that is true. First he says:

<sup>16</sup> "When the time of the first covenant with my people has finished,  
I will make a new covenant with them.  
I will do this for them:  
I will cause them to understand my laws  
and I will cause them to obey them."

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> And the Holy Spirit also testifies to us. For first he said,

<sup>16</sup> "This is the covenant that I will make with them  
after those days, says the Lord.  
I will put my laws in their hearts,  
and I will write them on their minds.

**translationWords:**

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- testimony, testify
- covenant
- Lord
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- heart
- mind

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.
- **with them** - "with my people"
- **after those days** - "when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished" (UDB)
- **I will put my laws in their hearts, and I will write them on their minds** - People's hearts and minds are spoken of as if God's laws could be put or written on them. AT: "I will cause them to understand my laws and I will cause them to obey them" (UDB) (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then he said:

”I will forgive them for their sins,  
and I will consider that they are no longer guilty for having sinned.”

<sup>18</sup> When God has forgiven someone’s sins, that person does not need to make any more offerings to make up for his sin!

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> No more will I remember their sins and iniquities.”

<sup>18</sup> Now where there is forgiveness for these, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- iniquity
- forgive, forgiveness
- sacrifice, offering

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.
- **No more will I remember their sins and iniquities** - This is the second part of the Holy Spirit’s testimony (See: [10:15-16](#)). You can make this explicit in the translation. AT: “Then next he said, ‘No more will I remember their sins and iniquities.’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **No more will I remember their sins** - “I will no longer remember their sins” or “I will no longer think about their sins”
- **sins and iniquities** - The words “sins” and “iniquities” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the sin is. AT: “sinful, evil deeds” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Now** - This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **where there is forgiveness for these** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “forgiveness” is expressed as the verb “forgive.” AT: “when God has forgiven these things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **there is no longer any sacrifice for sin** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “sacrifice” is expressed as the verb “make offerings.” AT: “people no longer need to make offerings for sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:19-22****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> So, my fellow believers, because we trust in what Jesus accomplished when his own blood flowed for us, we can confidently go into God's very presence that was symbolized by the very holy place in the sacred tent. <sup>20</sup> He has enabled us to go into God's presence by making a new way in which we can live forever. This new way is Jesus, who died for us. <sup>21</sup> Christ is a great priest who rules over us, we who are God's people. <sup>22</sup> So we must approach God sincerely by confidently trusting in Jesus. It is he who has made our hearts pure from having sinned. It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our hearts, and as if he had washed our bodies in pure water.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, brothers, we have confidence to enter into the most holy place by the blood of Jesus. <sup>20</sup> That is the new and living way that he has opened for us through the curtain, that is, by means of his flesh. <sup>21</sup> And because we have a great priest over the house of God, <sup>22</sup> let us approach with true hearts in the full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled clean from an evil conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water.

**translationWords:**

- brother
- confidence, confident
- holy place, most holy place
- blood
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- life, live, living, alive
- curtain
- flesh
- priest, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- true, truth, come true
- heart
- faith
- clean, cleanse
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- conscience
- water, waters

## translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having made it clear that there is only one sacrifice for sin, the writer continues with the picture of the most holy place in the temple, where only the high priest could enter each year with the blood of the sacrifice for sins. He reminds the believers that they now worship God in his presence as if they were standing in the most holy place.
- **brothers** - Here this means all believers in Christ whether male or female. AT: “brothers and sisters” or “fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **the most holy place** - This means the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **by the blood of Jesus** - Here “blood of Jesus” refers to the death of Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **living way** - Possible meanings are 1) this new way to God that Jesus has provided results in believers living forever or 2) Jesus is alive, and he is the way believers enter into the presence of God.
- **through the curtain** - The curtain in the earthly temple represents the separation between people and God’s true presence. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **by means of his flesh** - Here “flesh” stands for the body of Jesus, and his body stands for his sacrificial death. AT: “by means of his death” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **we have a great priest over the house of God** - This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this “great priest.”
- **over the house** - “in charge of the house”
- **the house of God** - This speaks about God’s people as if they were a literal house. AT: “all the people of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **let us approach** - Here “approach” stands for worshiping God, as a priest would go up to God’s altar to sacrifice animals to him. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **true hearts** - “faithful hearts” or “honest hearts.” Here “hearts” stands for the genuine will and motivation of the believers. AT: “sincerely” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in the full assurance of faith** - “with a confident faith” or “trusting completely in Jesus”
- **having our hearts sprinkled clean** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as if he made our hearts clean with his blood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **hearts sprinkled clean** - Here “hearts” stands for the conscience, the awareness of right and wrong. Being made clean stands for being forgiven and being given the status of righteousness. Hearts are spoken of as if they could be cleansed by blood. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **sprinkled** - Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [9:19](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **having our bodies washed with pure water** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as if he had washed our bodies in pure water” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **our bodies washed with pure water** - If the translator understands this phrase as referring to Christian baptism, then “water” is literal, not figurative. But if water is taken as literal, then “pure” is figurative, standing for the spiritual purity that baptism is said here to accomplish. The “washing” stands for the believer being made acceptable to God. (See: [Metonymy](#) and

Metaphor)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> We must unwaveringly keep stating what we believe. Since God faithfully does all he promised to do, we must confidently expect him to do these things. <sup>24</sup> And let us think how each of us can best encourage each other to love one another and to do good deeds. <sup>25</sup> We must not cease assembling ourselves to worship the Lord, as some people have done. Instead, each one of us must encourage the others. Let us do that all the more since we know that the time that the Lord will return is near.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Let us also hold tightly to the confession of our confident expectation, without wavering, because God, who has promised, is faithful. <sup>24</sup> Let us consider how to motivate one another to love and good deeds. <sup>25</sup> Let us not stop meeting together, as some have done. Instead, encourage one another more and more, and all the more as you see the day coming closer.

**translationWords:**

- confess, confession
- confidence, confident
- God
- promise
- faithful, faithfulness
- love
- works, deeds, work, acts
- assembly, assemble
- encourage, encouragement
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

**translationNotes:**

- **hold tightly to the confession of our confident expectation** - Here a set of beliefs that a person confesses is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could hold in his hand. The phrase “hold tightly” means “to continue.” AT: “continue telling people that we are confident because we believe that God will do what he has promised to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **without wavering** - Being uncertain about something is spoken of as if he were wavering or leaning from side to side. AT: “without being unsure” or “without doubting” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Let us not stop meeting together** - You can make explicit that the people met to worship. AT: “Let us not stop coming together to worship” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **as you see the day coming closer** - A future time is spoken of as if it were an object coming closer to the speaker. Here “the day” refers to when Jesus will return. AT: “as you know that Christ will return soon” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> If we deliberately and habitually sin after we have known the true message about Christ, no other sacrifice will help us. <sup>27</sup> Instead, we must fearfully expect that God will judge us, and then he will righteously punish all his enemies in a furious fire.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> For if we deliberately go on sinning after we have received the knowledge of the truth, a sacrifice for sins no longer exists. <sup>27</sup> Instead, there is only a certain fearful expectation of judgment, and a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies.

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- know, knowledge, make known
- true, truth, come true
- sacrifice, offering
- judge, judgment
- fire
- consume
- adversary, enemy

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer then gives his fourth warning.
- **deliberately** - “intentionally”
- **after we have received the knowledge of the truth** - Knowledge of the truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be given by one person to another. AT: “after we have learned the truth” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the truth** - The truth about God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a sacrifice for sins no longer exists** - No one is able to give a new sacrifice because Christ's sacrifice is the only one that works. AT: “no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a sacrifice for sins** - Here “sacrifice for sins” stands for “an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins”
- **of judgment** - Of God's judgment, that is, that God will judge. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies** - God's fury is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> Everyone who rejected the laws that God gave Moses had to die without mercy when at least two or three people testified against him. <sup>29</sup> That was severe punishment. But Christ is God's Son, and he is also God. If anyone rejects the covenant that he has made and despises the blood that flowed from him—if that person rejects the blood in exchange for which God forgave him—if that person rejects the Spirit of God, who acted so kindly toward him—then God will punish him very, very severely.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Anyone who has rejected the law of Moses dies without mercy at the testimony of two or three witnesses. <sup>29</sup> How much worse punishment do you think one deserves who has trampled under foot the Son of God, who treated the blood of the covenant as unholy—the blood by which he was sanctified—and insulted the Spirit of grace?

**translationWords:**

- reject
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- death, die, dead
- mercy, merciful
- testimony, testify
- witness, eyewitness
- punish, punishment
- trample
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- blood
- covenant
- unholy
- sanctify, sanctification
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- grace, gracious

**translationNotes:**

- **of two or three witnesses** - It is implied that this means “of at least two or three witness.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **How much worse punishment do you think one deserves ... grace?** - The author is emphasizing the greatness of the punishment for those who reject Christ. AT: “This was severe

punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone ... grace!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **has trampled under foot the Son of God** - Disregarding Christ and scorning him are spoken of as if someone had walked on him. AT: “has rejected the Son of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **who treated the blood of the covenant as unholy** - This shows how the person has trampled the Son of God. AT: “by treating the blood of the covenant as unholy”
- **the blood of the covenant** - Here “blood” stands for Christ’s death, by which God established the new covenant. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the blood by which he was sanctified** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the blood by which God sanctified him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Spirit of grace** - “Spirit of God who provides grace”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 10:30-31

### UDB:

<sup>30</sup> We can be sure of this, since we know that God said, “The right and power to give people what they deserve for having sinned belongs to me. I will punish them as they deserve.” And Moses wrote, “The Lord will judge his people.” <sup>31</sup> It will be a terrible thing if the all-powerful God who really lives seizes and punishes you!

### ULB:

<sup>30</sup> For we know the one who said, “Vengeance belongs to me; I will pay back.” And again, “The Lord will judge his people.” <sup>31</sup> It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God!

### translationWords:

- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The word “we” here refers to the writer and all believers. These two quotations come from the law that Moses gave in the Old Testament. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **Vengeance belongs to me** - Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belonged to God, who had the right to do as he wished with what he owned. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will pay back** - God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying someone the wages he deserves. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to fall into the hands** - Receiving God’s full punishment is spoken of as if the person falls into God’s hands. Here “hands” refers to God’s power to judge. AT: “to receive God’s full punishment” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:32-34****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> Remember the earlier times when you first understood the truth about Christ. You endured much hardship, and when you suffered, you continued to trust God. <sup>33</sup> At times people insulted you in public; at other times they made you suffer. At other times you suffered with other believers in their hardships. <sup>34</sup> You not only were kind to those who were in prison because they believed in Christ, but you also accepted it joyfully when unbelievers took away your possessions. You accepted it because you yourselves knew very well that you had possessions in heaven forever, possessions that are much better than those that they took from you!

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> But remember the former days, after you were enlightened, how you endured a great struggle in suffering. <sup>33</sup> You were exposed to public ridicule by insults and persecution, and you were sharing with those who went through such suffering. <sup>34</sup> For you had compassion on those who were prisoners, and you accepted with joy the seizure of your possessions. You knew that you yourselves had a better and everlasting possession.[1]Some older versions read, *For you had compassion on me in my chains.*

**translationWords:**

- biblical time: day
- endure, endurance
- suffer, suffering
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- persecute, persecution
- compassion, compassionate
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- joy, joyful
- seize
- possess, possession
- everlasting, eternal, eternity

**translationNotes:**

- **the former days** - “the time in the past”
- **after you were enlightened** - Learning the truth is spoken of as if God shined a light on the person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “after you learned the truth about Christ” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)
- **how you endured a great struggle in suffering** - “how much suffering you had to endure”

- **You were exposed to public ridicule by insults and persecution** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People ridiculed you by insulting and persecuting you in public” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **you were sharing with those** - “you joined those”
- **a better and everlasting possession** - God’s eternal blessings are spoken of as a “possession.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:35-37****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, because if you continue to trust in God, he will greatly reward you. <sup>36</sup> You must patiently continue to trust in him in order that, because of your doing what God wants you to do, he will give you what he has promised. <sup>37</sup> A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said about the Messiah:

”In just a short time the one I promised would come will surely come;  
he will not delay coming.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward. <sup>36</sup> For you need patience, so that you may receive what God has promised, after you have done his will.

<sup>37</sup> ”For in a very little while,  
the one who is coming will indeed come and not delay.

**translationWords:**

- confidence, confident
- reward
- patient, patience
- promise
- will of God

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - In 10:37 is a quotation from the prophet Isaiah in the Old Testament.
- **do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward** - Rejecting a promise is spoken of as if it were throwing away something worthless or useless. AT: “do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly” or “continue to trust completely in God, who will reward you greatly” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **For in a very little while** - You can make this explicit. AT: “As God said in the scriptures, ‘For in a very little while’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **in a very little while** - “very soon”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 10:38-39****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> But those who belong to me, who act righteously, will continue to live trusting in me.

If they are cowards and stop trusting in me,  
I will not be pleased with them.

<sup>39</sup> But we are not people who are cowards and cause God to destroy us. Instead, we are people who trust in him, so that he will save us forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> My righteous one will live by faith.  
If he turns back, I will not be pleased with him.”

<sup>39</sup> But we are not any of those who turn back to destruction. Instead, we are some of those who have faith for keeping our soul.

**translationWords:**

- righteous, righteousness
- faith
- turn, turn away, turn back
- soul

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - In 10:38 the author quotes from the prophet Habakkuk, which directly follows the quotation from the prophet Isaiah in 10:37.
- **My righteous one ... If he turns ... with him** - These refer to any of God’s people in general. AT: “My faithful people ... If any one of them turns ... with that person” or “My faithful people ... If they turn ... with them” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases**)
- **My righteous ... I will** - Here “My” and “I” refer to God.
- **If he turns back** - Losing courage and faith are spoken of as if it were turning back from following a path. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **who turn back to destruction** - Losing courage and faith are spoken of as if it were turning back from following a path. And “destruction” is spoken of as if it were a destination. AT: “who stop trusting God, which will cause him to destroy us” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **for keeping our soul** - Living eternally with God is spoken of as if it were keeping one’s soul. Here “soul” refers to the whole person. AT: “, which will result in us living with God forever” (See: **Metaphor** and **Synecdoche**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 10 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hebrews 11 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Many people refer to this chapter as the “Hall of Fame of faith.” This is because it chronicles the people in history with the greatest faith in God. (See: [faith](#))

Having contrasted Christianity with Judaism, the author now begins to show the continuity between the two. It is faith, which God has always required, no matter what the covenantal arrangement guiding the actions of his children.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Faith**

This chapter gives a definition of the biblical concept of faith. The translator’s language may not have a word that directly corresponds to this definition. It is common for a language to lack a word that directly corresponds to a biblical word or concept.

#### **Links:**

- [Hebrews 11:01 Notes](#)

## Hebrews 11:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> It is because people trust God that they are sure they will receive the things they confidently expect him to give them. They are also certain they will see those things happen, though no one sees them yet. <sup>2</sup> Because our ancestors trusted in God, he approved of them. <sup>3</sup> Because we trust in God, we understand that God formed the universe by commanding that it exist. So the things we see were not made from things that already existed.

### ULB:

**11** <sup>1</sup> Now faith is the assurance about the things that are confidently expected. It is the evidence about events that are still not seen. <sup>2</sup> For because of this the ancestors were approved for their faith. <sup>3</sup> By faith we understand that the universe was created by God's command, so that what is visible was not made out of things that were visible.

### translationWords:

- faith
- confidence, confident
- ancestor, father, forefather
- create, creation, Creator
- God
- command, to command, commandment

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The author tells three things about faith in this brief introduction.
- **Now** - This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here the author starts to explain the meaning of "faith."
- **faith is the assurance about the things that are confidently expected** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "faith is what allows a person to confidently expect certain things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **confidently expected** - Here this refers specifically to the sure promises of God, especially the certainty that all believers in Jesus will live with God forever in heaven.
- **that are still not seen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that we still have not seen" or "that still have not happened" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **For because of this** - "Because they were certain about events that had not happened"
- **the ancestors were approved for their faith** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God approved of our ancestors because they had faith" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **the ancestors** - The author is speaking to the Hebrews about Hebrew ancestors. AT: “our ancestors” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the universe was created by God’s command** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God created the universe by commanding it to exist” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **what is visible was not made out of things that were visible** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God did not create what we see out of things that were visible”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:4

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Because Adam's son Abel trusted God, he sacrificed something better to God than what his older brother Cain offered to God. So God spoke well about what Abel sacrificed, and God declared that Abel was righteous. And although Abel is dead, we still learn from him about trusting God.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> It was by faith that Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he was attested to be righteous, and God spoke well of him because of his offerings. And by faith Abel still speaks, even though he is dead.

### translationWords:

- [Abel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [gift](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer then gives many examples (mostly from Old Testament writings) of people who lived by faith even though they did not receive what God had promised while they lived on the earth.
- **he was attested to be righteous** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God declared that Abel was righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he was attested to be righteous** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God declared him to be righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Abel still speaks** - Reading the scriptures and learning about Abel's faith is spoken of as if Abel himself were still speaking. AT: "we still learn from what Abel did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Because Enoch believed God, God took him up to heaven. Enoch did not die, but no one could find him. Before God took him away, he testified that Enoch pleased him well. <sup>6</sup> Now it is possible for people to please God only if they trust him, because anyone who wants to come to God must first believe that God exists and that he rewards those who try to know him.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> It was by faith that Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death. “He was not found, because God took him.” For before he was taken up, it was testified that he had pleased God. <sup>6</sup> Now without faith it is impossible to please him. For it is necessary that anyone coming to God must believe that he exists and that he is a rewarder of those who seek him.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Enoch
- death, die, dead
- believe, believe in, belief
- reward
- seek, sought

### translationNotes:

- **It was by faith that Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “It was by faith that Enoch did not die because God took him” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **see death** - This speaks of death as if it were an object that people can see. It means to experience death. AT: “die” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **before he was taken up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “before God took him” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **it was testified that he had pleased God** - This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “God said that Enoch had pleased him” or 2) “people said that Enoch pleased God.” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Now without faith** - Here “Now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **without faith it is impossible to please him** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “a person can please God only if he has faith in God” (See: **Double Negatives**)

- **that anyone coming to God** - Wanting to worship God and belong to his people is spoken of as if the person is literally coming to God. AT: “that anyone who wants to belong to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he is a rewarder of those** - “he rewards those”
- **those who seek him** - Learning about God and making an effort to obey him is spoken of as if it were someone seeking to find another person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 11:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> God warned Noah that he would send a flood, and Noah believed him. He honored God by building a ship to save his family. In this way he showed that the rest of the people deserved for God to punish them. So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because Noah trusted him.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> It was by faith that Noah, having been given a divine message about things not yet seen, with godly reverence built a ship to save his household. By doing this, he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that is according to faith.

**translationWords:**

- faith
- Noah
- divine
- godly, godliness
- reverence
- save, safe
- household
- condemn, condemnation
- world, worldly
- heir
- righteous, righteousness

**translationNotes:**

- **having been given a divine message** - This can be stated in active form and in other terms. AT: “because God told him” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **about things not yet seen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “about things no one had ever seen before” or “about events that had not happened yet” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **the world** - Here “world” refers to the world’s human population. AT: “the people living in the world at that time” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **became an heir of the righteousness** - Noah is spoken of as if he were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. AT: “received from God the righteousness” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **that is according to faith** - “that God gives to those who have faith in him”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 11:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> God called Abraham to go to the land that he would give his descendants. Because Abraham trusted him, he obeyed God and left his country, even though he did not know where he was going. <sup>9</sup> Because Abraham trusted God, he lived as though he were a foreigner in a land that God had promised to give his descendants. Abraham lived in tents, and his son Isaac and his grandson Jacob did also. God promised to give to Isaac and Jacob the same things that he promised to give Abraham. <sup>10</sup> Abraham was waiting to live in the permanent city that God himself would design and build.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> It was by faith that Abraham, when he was called, obeyed and went out to the place that he was to receive as an inheritance. He went out, not knowing where he was going. <sup>9</sup> It was by faith that he lived in the land of promise as a foreigner. He lived in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise. <sup>10</sup> For he was looking forward to the city which has foundations, the city of which the architect and builder would be God.

**translationWords:**

- faith
- Abraham, Abram
- call, calling, called, call out
- obey, obedient, obedience
- receive
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- know, knowledge, make known
- life, live, living, alive
- promise
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- tent
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- heir
- foundation, founded

**translationNotes:**

- **when he was called** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “when God called him” (See: *Active or Passive*)

- **went out to the place** - “left his home to go to the place”
- **that he was to receive as an inheritance** - The land that God promised to give Abraham’s descendants is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that Abraham was to receive. AT: “that God would give him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He went out** - “He left his home”
- **he lived in the land of promise as a foreigner** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “promise” is expressed as the verb “promised.” AT: “he lived as a foreigner in the land God had promised to him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **fellow heirs** - “heirs together.” This speaks about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as if they were heirs that would receive an inheritance from their father. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the city which has foundations** - That is, permanent foundations. So the city is to be a permanent city. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the city of which the architect and builder would be God** - God is spoken of as if he were an architect and a builder. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **architect** - a person who designs buildings

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> And even though Sarah was unable to have children because of her old-age, Abraham received the ability to father a child, because he considered Yahweh to be faithful because he had made the promise to him that he would have a son. <sup>12</sup> So, although Abraham was too old to have children, from that one man people descended who are as many in number as the stars in the sky and are as countless as the grains of sand along the shore, just like God promised him.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> It was by faith, even though Sarah herself was barren, that Abraham received ability to father a child. This happened even though he was too old, since he considered as faithful the one who had given the promise.[1]There is some question about whether it was Abraham's faith or Sarah's faith that was in view. *By faith Sarah, though she was old, received the power to have a child, even though she was too old to bear a child, since she considered the one who gave the promise to be faithful.* <sup>12</sup> Therefore, from this one man, who was almost dead, were born those who were like the stars in the sky for their multitude and like the grains of sand along the seashore, which are uncountable.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Sarah, Sarai
- barren
- Abraham, Abram
- power, powers
- conceive, conception
- faithful, faithfulness
- promise
- death, die, dead
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### translationNotes:

- **It was by faith** - The abstract noun "faith" can be expressed with the verb believe. Possible meanings are 1) it was by Abraham's faith. AT: "Because Abraham believed God" or 2) it was by Sarah's faith. AT: "Because Sarah believed God" (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **received ability to father a child** - "received ability to become a father" or "received ability to have a child"
- **since he considered as faithful the one who had given the promise** - "because he believed God, who had give the promise, to be faithful"

- **almost dead** - “too old to have children” or “very old”
- **those who were like the stars in the sky for their multitude and like the grains of sand along the seashore, which are uncountable** - This simile means Abraham had very many descendants. (See: [Simile](#))
- **which are uncountable** - “which are too many for anyone to count”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> While they still trusted in God, all these people died. Even though they had not yet received the things that God had promised to give them, it was as though they had seen those things in the distance, and they were glad. It was as though they had admitted that they did not belong to this earth, but that they were only here temporarily. <sup>14</sup> As for people who say such things, they clearly show that they long for a place that will become their true native land.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> It was in faith that all these died without receiving the promises. Instead, after seeing and greeting them from far off, they admitted that they were foreigners and exiles on earth. <sup>14</sup> For those who say such things make it clear that they are seeking a homeland.

### translationWords:

- [faith](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [promise](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

### translationNotes:

- **without receiving the promises** - This speaks of promises as if they are objects that a person receives. AT: “without receiving what God had promised them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **after seeing and greeting them from far off** - Future promised events are spoken of as if they were travelers arriving from far away. AT: “after learning what God will do in the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they admitted** - “they acknowledged” or “they accepted”
- **they were foreigners and exiles on earth** - Here “foreigners” and “exiles” mean basically the same thing. This emphasizes that this earth was not their true home. They were waiting for their true home that God would make for them. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **a homeland** - “a country for them to belong to”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> If they had been thinking that their true native land was the place from which they had come, they could have simply returned there. <sup>16</sup> But, instead, they desired a better place in which to live. They desired a home in heaven. So God has prepared a city for them to live with him, and he is pleased for them to say that he is their God.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> If they had been thinking of the country from which they had gone out, they would have had opportunity to return. <sup>16</sup> But as it is, they desire a better country, that is, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God, since he has prepared a city for them.

### translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

### translationNotes:

- **heavenly one** - “heavenly country” or “country in heaven”
- **God is not ashamed to be called their God** - This can be expressed in active and positive form. AT: “God is happy to have them call him their God” or “God is proud to have them say that he is their God” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Litotes](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:17-19

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Because Abraham trusted God, he was ready to kill his son Isaac as a sacrifice when God tested him. Abraham, to whom God promised to give a son, was going to sacrifice the very son whom he had given him, the only son whom his own wife had borne! <sup>18</sup> It was about this son that God had said, “It is only from Isaac that I will consider your family to descend.” <sup>19</sup> Abraham considered that to fulfill that promise, God could make Isaac live again even if he died after Abraham had sacrificed him! The result was that when Abraham did receive Isaac back after God told him not to harm Isaac, it was as though he received him back even after he died.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> It was by faith that Abraham, when he was tested, offered Isaac. It was his only son whom he offered, he who had received the promises. <sup>18</sup> It was Abraham to whom it had been said, “It is through Isaac that your descendants will be named.” <sup>19</sup> Abraham reasoned that God was able to raise up Isaac from the dead ones, and figuratively speaking, it was from them that he received him back.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Abraham, Abram
- test
- sacrifice, offering
- Isaac
- promise
- descendant, descended from
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- death, die, dead

### translationNotes:

- **when he was tested** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “when God tested him” (See: *Active or Passive*)
- **to whom it had been said** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “to whom God said” (See: *Active or Passive*)
- **that your descendants will be named** - Here “named” means assigned or designated. This sentence can be stated in active form. AT: “that I will designate your descendants”
- **figuratively speaking** - “in a manner of speaking.” This means that what the author says next is not to be understood literally. God did not bring Isaac back from death literally.

But because Abraham was about to sacrifice Isaac when God stopped him, it was as if God brought him back from the dead.

- **it was from them** - “it was from the dead ones”
- **he received him back** - “Abraham received Isaac back”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 11:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Because Isaac trusted God, he prayed that God would bless his sons Jacob and Esau after he died.

<sup>21</sup> Because Jacob trusted God, as he was dying, he prayed God would bless each of the sons of his own son Joseph. He worshiped God as he leaned upon his walking stick before he died. <sup>22</sup> Because Joseph trusted God, when he was about to die in Egypt, he thought ahead to the time when the Israelites would leave Egypt, and he instructed his people to carry his bones with them when they left Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> It was also by faith about things to come that Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau. <sup>21</sup> It was by faith that Jacob, when he was dying, blessed each of Joseph's sons. Jacob worshiped, leaning on the top of his staff. <sup>22</sup> It was by faith that Joseph, when his end was near, spoke of the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt and instructed them about his bones.

**translationWords:**

- faith
- Isaac
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Jacob, Israel
- Esau
- Joseph (OT)
- worship
- staff
- children, child
- Egypt, Egyptian
- instruct, instruction

**translationNotes:**

- **Jacob worshiped** - "Jacob worshiped God"
- **when his end was near** - Here "his end" is a polite way of referring to death. AT: "when he was about to die" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **spoke of the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt** - "spoke of when the children of Israel would leave Egypt"
- **the children of Israel** - "the Israelites" or "the descendants of Israel"

- **and instructed them about his bones** - Joseph died while in Egypt. He wanted his people to take his bones with them when they left Egypt so they could bury his bones in the land that God promised them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:23-26

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> Because Moses' father and mother trusted God, they hid their son for three months shortly after he was born, because they saw that the child was beautiful. They were not afraid of disobeying what the king of Egypt had commanded, that all the Jewish male babies must die. <sup>24</sup> The daughter of the king, whom they called Pharaoh, raised Moses, but when Moses had grown up, because he trusted God, he refused to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the son of Pharaoh's daughter." <sup>25</sup> He decided that it was better for others to mistreat him for a time along with God's people, than to temporarily enjoy living sinfully in the king's palace. <sup>26</sup> He decided that if he suffered for Christ, it would be worth far more in God's sight than owning the treasures of Egypt that he would receive as one of Pharaoh's family. He looked forward to the time when God would give him an eternal reward.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> It was by faith that Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents because they saw he was a beautiful child. They were not afraid of the king's command. <sup>24</sup> It was by faith that Moses, after he had grown up, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter. <sup>25</sup> Instead, he chose to suffer with the people of God, rather than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a while. <sup>26</sup> He reasoned that the disgrace of following Christ was greater riches than Egypt's treasures. For he was fixing his eyes on his reward.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Moses
- biblical time: month
- king
- command, to command, commandment
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- people of God, my people
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- disgrace, disgraceful
- Christ, Messiah
- Egypt, Egyptian
- reward

### translationNotes:

- **Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Moses' parents hid him for three months after he was born" (See:

**Active or Passive)**

- **had grown up** - “had become an adult”
- **refused to be called** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “refused to allow people to call him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the disgrace of following Christ** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “disgrace” is expressed as the verb “disrespect.” AT: “the experience of people disrespecting him because he did what Christ would want” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **following Christ** - Obeying Christ is spoken of as if it were following him down a path. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fixing his eyes on his reward** - Fully concentrating on achieving a goal is spoken of as if a person were staring at an object and refusing to look away. AT: “doing what he knew would earn him a reward in heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> Because he trusted God, Moses left Egypt. He was not afraid that the king would be angry because he left. He kept going because it was as though he kept seeing God, whom no one can see. <sup>28</sup> Because Moses believed God would save his own people, he obeyed God's commands about Passover, which became a yearly festival. He commanded the people to kill lambs and sprinkle their blood on their doorposts so that the angel who causes people to die would not kill the oldest male Israelites with the oldest sons in each Egyptian family.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> It was by faith that Moses left Egypt. He did not fear the king's anger, for he endured as if he were seeing the one who is invisible. <sup>28</sup> It was by faith that he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn should not touch the Israelites' firstborn sons.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- king
- angry, anger
- endure, endurance
- Passover
- blood
- destroyer
- firstborn
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### translationNotes:

- **he endured as if he were seeing the one who is invisible** - Moses is spoken of as if he saw God, who is invisible. (See: [Simile](#))
- **the one who is invisible** - “the one no one can see”
- **the sprinkling of the blood** - This refers to God's command to the Israelites to kill a lamb and spread its blood on every doorpost of every house where Israelites lived. This would prevent the destroyer from harming their firstborn sons. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **should not touch** - Here “touch” refers to harming or to killing someone. AT: “should not harm” or “should not kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:29-31

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> Because the Israelites trusted God when they walked through the Sea of Reeds, it was as though they were walking on dry land! But, when the army of Egypt also attempted to cross where the sea had been, they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them!

<sup>30</sup> Because the Israelite people trusted God, the walls around the city of Jericho collapsed, after the Israelites marched around the walls for seven days.

<sup>31</sup> Rahab was a prostitute, but because she trusted God, she did not perish with those inside Jericho who disobeyed God. Joshua had sent spies into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed those spies peacefully.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> It was by faith that they passed through the Sea of Reeds as if over dry land. When the Egyptians tried to do this, they were swallowed up. <sup>30</sup> It was by faith that Jericho's walls fell down, after they had been circled around for seven days. <sup>31</sup> It was by faith that Rahab the prostitute did not die with those who were disobedient, because she had received the spies in peace.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Sea of Reeds, Red Sea
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jericho
- biblical time: day
- Rahab
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- perish, perishing, perishable
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- peace, peaceful

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here the first word “they” refers to the Israelites, the second “they” refers to the Egyptians, the third “they” refers to the walls of Jericho.
- **they passed through the Sea of Reeds** - “the Israelites passed through the Sea of Reeds”
- **they were swallowed up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the water swallowed up the Egyptians” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **they were swallowed up** - The water is spoken of as if it were an animal. AT: “the Egyptians drowned in the water” (See: [Personification](#))
- **they had been circled around for seven days** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Israelites marched around the walls for seven days” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **seven days** - “7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **had received the spies in peace** - “had peacefully received the spies”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 11:32-34****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> I do not know what more I should say about others who trusted in God. It would take too much time to tell about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and the other prophets. <sup>33</sup> Because they trusted God, some of them did great deeds for him. Some conquered lands ruled by powerful men. Some ruled Israel and justly treated men and nations. Some received from God the things that he promised to give them. Some forced lions to keep their mouths shut. <sup>34</sup> Some escaped from burning up in fire. Some escaped from others who tried to kill them with swords. Some became well again after being sick. Some became powerful when they fought wars. Some caused armies that came from foreign lands to run away from them.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> And what more can I say? For the time will fail me if I tell about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and about the prophets. <sup>33</sup> It was through faith that they conquered kingdoms, worked justice, and received promises. They stopped the mouths of lions, <sup>34</sup> extinguished the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, were healed of illnesses, became mighty in battle, and defeated foreign armies.

**translationWords:**

- Gideon
- Samson
- Jephthah
- David
- Samuel
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- faith
- kingdom
- just, justice, justly
- promise
- lion
- quench
- fire
- sword
- mighty, might
- foreigner, foreign, alien

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The writer continues to speak of what God did for the ancestors of the people of Israel.
- **And what more can I say?** - The author uses a question to emphasize that there are many examples that he could have quoted. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: “And there are many more examples.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the time will fail me** - “I will not have enough time”
- **Barak** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **It was through faith that they** - Here “they” does not mean that each person listed in 11:32 did all the things the author is about to mention. The author means in general these are the kinds of things that those with faith were able to do. AT: “It was through faith that men like these”
- **they conquered kingdoms** - Here “kingdoms” refers to the people who lived there. AT: “they defeated the people of foreign kingdoms”
- **They stopped the mouths of lions, extinguished the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword** - These are some of the ways God saved believers from death. AT: “Lions did not eat them, fire did not burn them, their enemies did not kill them” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **were healed of illnesses** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “received healing from God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **became mighty in battle, and defeated** - “they became mighty in battle and defeated”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:35-38

### UDB:

<sup>35</sup> Some women who trusted God received their relatives back again when God made them live again after they had died. But others who trusted God were tortured until they died. They were tortured because they refused to agree when their enemies said, “We will release you if you deny that you believe in God.” They refused to do that, because they wanted to live with God forever, which is better than continuing to live on earth. <sup>36</sup> Other people who trusted God were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained and put in prison. <sup>37</sup> Some of those believers were stoned to death. Others were sawn completely in two. Others were killed with swords. Others of these people who trusted God wandered around the land wearing garments made only of skins from sheep and goats. They did not have any money. People constantly oppressed them and harmed them. <sup>38</sup> The people on earth who caused those who trusted in God to suffer like this were so bad that they did not deserve to live with people like those who trusted God. Some who trusted God wandered in deserts and mountains. Some lived in caves and in other large holes in the ground.

### ULB:

<sup>35</sup> Women received back their dead by resurrection. Others were tortured, not accepting release so that they would obtain a better resurrection. <sup>36</sup> Others had testing in mocking and whippings, and even chains and imprisonment. <sup>37</sup> They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword. They went about in sheepskins and goatskins. They were destitute, oppressed, mistreated.[1]Some older versions read, *They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were put to the test. They were killed with the sword.* <sup>38</sup> The world was not worthy of them. They wandered in wildernesses, mountains, caves, and in the holes in the ground.

### translationWords:

- resurrection
- test
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- stone, stoning
- sword
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid
- world, worldly
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- desert, wilderness

**translationNotes:**

- **Women received back their dead by resurrection** - The phrase “by resurrection” means “when God raised them from the dead.” The word “dead” is a nominal adjective. It can be stated as a verb. AT: “Women received back alive those who had died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **Others were tortured, not accepting release** - It is implied that their enemies would release them from prison if they would deny Jesus as Lord. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Others accepted torture rather than release from prison” or “Others allowed their enemies to torture them rather than deny Jesus so that their enemies would release them, and” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **tortured** - made to suffer great mental or physical pain
- **a better resurrection** - Possible meanings are 1) these people will experience a better life in heaven than what they experienced in this world or 2) these people will have a better resurrection than those who did not have faith. Those with faith will live forever with God. Those without faith will live forever separated from God.
- **Others had testing in mocking and whippings ... They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword** - These can be stated in active form. AT: “People mocked and whipped others ... People threw stones at others. People sawed others in two. People killed others with the sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Others had testing in mocking and whippings, and even chains and imprisonment** - This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns are expressed as verbs. AT: “God tested others by allowing their enemies to mock and whip them and even put them in chains and imprison them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **went about** - “went from place to place” or “lived all the time”
- **in sheepskins and goatskins** - “wearing only the skins of sheep and goats”
- **They were destitute** - “They had nothing” or “They were very poor”
- **The world was not worthy** - Here “world” refers to the people. AT: “The people of this world were not worthy” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **caves, and in the holes in the ground** - “and some lived in caves and in holes in the ground”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 11:39-40

### UDB:

<sup>39</sup> Although God approved of all these people because they trusted him, he did not give them what he had promised them. <sup>40</sup> God knew ahead of time that what he would give us and them later would be better than giving them immediately what he promised. What God intends is that only when they and we are together will we have all that God intends us to have.

### ULB:

<sup>39</sup> Although all these people were approved by God because of their faith, they did not receive the promise. <sup>40</sup> God planned something better for us, so that without us, they would not be made perfect.

### translationWords:

- [faith](#)
- [promise](#)
- [perfect](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Although all these people were approved by God because of their faith, they did not receive the promise** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God honored all these because of their faith, but they did not themselves receive what God had promised” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the promise** - This expression stands for “what God had promised them.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **so that without us, they would not be made perfect** - This can be stated in positive and active form. AT: “in order that God would perfect us and them together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 11 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 11 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 12:5-6, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Discipline

God disciplines his children in the same way parents discipline or correct their children. This imagery is used because discipline is out of love. Different cultures may have different standards of parental discipline, some of which may be unbiblical. God's discipline is the way he uses different circumstances to correct his children and to bring them to repentance. (See: [discipline](#), [self-discipline](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

Many different figures of speech are used. This is more common in poetic writings than in narrative. The author uses this style of writing as a way to teach people.

#### Links:

- [Hebrews 12:01 Notes](#)

**Hebrews 12:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> We know about many people like these who proved that they trusted in God. Let us put off everything that weighs us down and so we put away the sin that clings to us. Then let us run our race patiently and do everything God gives us to do until we make it to the finish line. <sup>2</sup> And let us keep thinking about Jesus and give him all our attention. He endured the terrible suffering on the cross and he paid no attention to the people who tried to shame him. He did this because he knew how joyful God would make him later. He now sits at the place of highest honor beside the throne where God rules in heaven.

<sup>3</sup> Jesus patiently endured it when sinful people hatefully acted against him. Strengthen your hearts and minds with Jesus' example so that you will not give up trusting God or become discouraged.

**ULB:**

**12** <sup>1</sup> Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a large cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight and easily entangling sin. Let us patiently run the race that is placed before us. <sup>2</sup> Let us pay attention to Jesus, the beginner and perfecter of the faith. For the joy that was placed before him, he endured the cross, despised its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God. <sup>3</sup> So think about him, the one who has endured such opposition from sinners against himself, so that you do not become weary in your hearts and give up.

**translationWords:**

- witness, eyewitness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- patient, patience
- run, running
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- perfect
- faith
- joy, joyful
- endure, endurance
- cross
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- right hand
- throne

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because of this great number of Old Testament believers, the author talks of the life of faith that believers should live with Jesus as their example.
- **General Information:** - The words “we” and “us” refer to the author and his readers. The word “you” is plural and here refers to the readers. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))
- **we are surrounded by such a large cloud of witnesses** - The writer speaks about the Old Testament believers as if they were a cloud that surrounded the present-day believers. This can be stated in active form. AT: “such a large cloud of witnesses surrounds us” or “there are so many examples of faithful people about whom we learn in the scriptures” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **witnesses** - Here “witnesses” refers to the Old Testament believers in chapter 11 who lived before the race of faith that believers now run.
- **let us lay aside every weight and easily entangling sin** - Here “weight” and “easily entangling sin” are spoken of as if a person could take them off himself and put them down. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **every weight** - Attitudes or habits that keep believers from trusting and obeying God are spoken of as if they were loads that would make it difficult for a person to carry while running. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **easily entangling sin** - Sin is spoken of as if it were a net or something else that can trip people up and make them fall. AT: “sin that makes obeying God difficult” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Let us patiently run the race that is placed before us** - Following Jesus is spoken of as if it were running a race. AT: “Let us continue obeying what God has commanded us, just like a runner keeps going until the race is over” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **beginner and perfecter** - “creator and finisher.” This means that Jesus is the source of a believer’s faith. He is the one in whom believers trust, and he will also ensure that believers reach their goal.
- **the joy that was placed before him** - The joy that would belong to Jesus is spoken of as if God the Father had placed it before him to reach as a goal. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **despised its shame** - This means he was not concerned about the shame of dying on a cross.
- **sat down at the right hand** - Here “right hand” refers to a place of honor. AT: “he sat down in the place of honor.” See how you translated this in [1:3](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **of the throne of God** - Here “throne” refers to God’s rule as king. AT: “of God who is king” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **weary in your hearts** - Here “hearts” represents a person’s thoughts and emotions. AT: “discouraged” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 12:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> While you have struggled against being tempted to sin, you have not yet bled and died because of resisting evil, as Jesus did. <sup>5</sup> Do not forget these words that Solomon spoke to his son, which are the same with which God encourages you as his children:

”My son, pay attention when the Lord is disciplining you,  
and do not be discouraged when the Lord punishes you,  
<sup>6</sup> because everyone the Lord loves he also disciplines,  
and he severely corrects everyone he calls his own.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You have not yet resisted or struggled against sin to the point of blood. <sup>5</sup> And you have forgotten the encouragement that instructs you as sons:

”My son, do not think lightly of the Lord’s discipline,  
nor grow weary when you are corrected by him.”  
<sup>6</sup> For the Lord disciplines everyone whom he loves,  
and he punishes every son whom he receives.

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blood
- encourage, encouragement
- instruct, instruction
- son, son of
- Lord
- discipline, self-discipline
- love
- punish, punishment

**Translation Notes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The author of Hebrews has been comparing the Christian life to a race.

- **You have not yet resisted or struggled against sin** - Here “sin” is spoken of as if it were a person whom someone fights in a battle. AT: “You have not yet had to endure attacks of sinners” (See: [Personification](#))
- **to the point of blood** - Resisting opposition so much that one dies for it is spoken of as if one reached a certain place where he would die. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **of blood** - Here “blood” refers to death. AT: “of death” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the encouragement that instructs you** - Old Testament scripture is spoken of as if it were a person who could encourage others. AT: “what God has instructed you in the scriptures to encourage you” (See: [Personification](#))
- **as sons ... My son ... every son** - These refer to everyone who belongs to God whether male or female. AT: “as children ... My child ... every child” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **My son ... corrected by him** - Here the author is quoting from the book of Proverbs in the Old Testament.
- **do not think lightly of the Lord’s discipline, nor grow weary** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “take it very seriously when the Lord disciplines you, and do not grow weary” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **do not grow weary** - “do not become discouraged”
- **you are corrected by him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “he corrects you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **every son whom he receives** - “everyone whom he accepts as his child”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> God may discipline you by requiring you to endure difficult things that happen to you. When God disciplines you, he is treating you as a father treats his children. All fathers discipline their children. <sup>8</sup> So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children, you are not true children of God. You are like illegitimate children who have no father to correct them.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Endure suffering as discipline. God deals with you as with sons. For what son is there whom his father does not discipline? <sup>8</sup> But if you are without discipline, which all people share in, then you are illegitimate and not his sons.

### translationWords:

- endure, endurance
- suffer, suffering
- discipline, self-discipline
- God
- son, son of
- ancestor, father, forefather

### translationNotes:

- **Endure suffering as discipline** - “Understand that during suffering God teaches us discipline”
- **God deals with you as with sons** - This compares God disciplining his people to a father disciplining his sons. You can state clearly the understood information. AT: “God deals with you the same way a father deals with his sons” (See: [Simile](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **sons ... son** - All occurrences of these words may be stated to include males and females. AT: “children ... child” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **what son is there whom his father does not discipline?** - The author makes the point through this question that every good father disciplines his children. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: “every father disciplines his children!” (See [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **But if you are without discipline, which all people share in** - You can restate the abstract noun “discipline” as the verb “disciplining.” AT: “So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children” (UDB) (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **then you are illegitimate and not his sons** - Those whom God does not discipline are spoken of as if they are sons born to a man and a woman who are not married each other. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12:9-11

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> Furthermore, our natural fathers disciplined us when we were young, and we respected them for doing that. So we should certainly more readily accept God our spiritual Father disciplining us so we will live eternally! <sup>10</sup> Our natural fathers disciplined us for a short time as they considered right, but God always disciplines us to help us share in his holy nature. <sup>11</sup> During the time God is disciplining us, it does not seem to be anything about which we can rejoice. Instead, it pains us. But later it causes those who have learned from it to live righteously, which produces peace in us.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Furthermore, we had fathers in the flesh as disciplinarians, and we respected them. Should we not even more so obey the Father of spirits and live? <sup>10</sup> For on the one hand, our fathers disciplined us for a few days as it seemed right to them. But on the other hand, God does so for our good so that we can share in his holiness. <sup>11</sup> No discipline seems pleasant at the time, but rather painful. However it later produces the peaceful fruit of righteousness for those who have been trained by it.

### translationWords:

- flesh
- obey, obedient, obedience
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- spirit, spiritual
- life, live, living, alive
- holy, holiness
- peace, peaceful
- fruit, fruitful
- righteous, righteousness

### translationNotes:

- **fathers in the flesh** - Here “in the flesh” refers to a human person. AT: “natural fathers” (UDB) or “earthly fathers” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **as disciplinarians** - “who disciplined us”
- **Should we not even more so obey the Father of spirits and live?** - The author uses a question to emphasize that would should obey God the Father. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: “Therefore we should even more so obey the Father of spirits and live!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **and live** - “so that we will live”

- **the Father of spirits** - This idiom contrasts with “fathers in the flesh.” AT: “our spiritual Father” or “our Father in heaven” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **so that we can share in his holiness** - This metaphor speaks of “holiness” as if it were an object that can be shared among people. AT: “so that we may become holy as God is holy” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **peaceful fruit** - Here “fruit” is a metaphor and is spoken of as if it were a person who was at peace and who brought peace to others. (See: [Personification](#))
- **fruit of righteousness** - Righteousness, the quality of someone who obeys God, is spoken of as if it were fruit growing on a tree. Here the writer is saying that righteousness increases as a result of discipline. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who have been trained by it** - “who have been trained by discipline.” The discipline or correction done by the Lord is spoken of as if it were the Lord himself. This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God has trained by disciplining them” (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> So, instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out, trust God's discipline to renew you. <sup>13</sup> Go straight forward following Christ so that believers who are weak in trusting Christ will gain strength from you and not become crippled. Instead, they will be spiritually restored as an injured and useless limb becomes well again.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> So strengthen your hands that hang down and your weak knees. <sup>13</sup> Make straight paths for your feet, so that what is lame will not be sprained but rather be healed.

### translationWords:

- [heal, cure](#)

### translationNotes:

- **strengthen your hands that hang down and your weak knees. Make straight paths for your feet** - Possibly this continues the metaphor about the race in [12:1](#). It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **straight paths** - Living so as to honor and please God is spoken of as if it were a straight path to follow. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what is lame will not be sprained** - In this metaphor of running a race, "lame" represents another person in the race who is hurt and wants to quit. This, in turn, represent the Christians themselves. AT: "whoever is weak and wants to quit will not sprain his ankle" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will not be sprained** - Someone who stops obeying God is spoken of as if he injured his foot or ankle on a path. This can be stated in active form. AT: "will not sprain his ankle" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **rather be healed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "instead become strong" or "instead God will heal him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12:14-17

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Try to live peacefully with all people. Do your best to be holy, since no one will see the Lord if he is not holy. <sup>15</sup> Beware that none of you stops trusting in God, who has done kind things for us that we did not deserve. Be on guard so that none of you act in an evil way toward others, because that will grow like a root grows into a big plant, leading many believers to sin. <sup>16</sup> Do not let anyone be immoral or disobey God like Esau. He exchanged the rights he had as a firstborn son for only one meal. <sup>17</sup> Esau later wanted to get back his birth rights and all that his father Isaac's blessing would give him. But Isaac refused to do what Esau requested. So Esau found no way to get back his birth rights and blessing, even though he sought it tearfully.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Pursue peace with everyone, and also the holiness without which no one will see the Lord. <sup>15</sup> Be careful so that no one lacks God's grace, and that no root of bitterness grows up to cause trouble, so that many do not become polluted by it. <sup>16</sup> Be careful that there be no sexually immoral or ungodly person such as Esau, who for one meal sold his own birthright. <sup>17</sup> For you know that afterwards, when he desired to inherit the blessing, he was rejected, because he found no opportunity for repentance, even though he sought it with tears.

### translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- holy, holiness
- Lord
- grace, gracious
- sexual immorality
- ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
- Esau
- birthright
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- bless, blessed, blessing
- reject
- repent, repentance

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The man Esau, who was told about in the writings of Moses, refers to Isaac's first son and Jacob's brother.

- **Pursue peace with everyone** - Here “Pursue” is spoken of as if it were something that a person must chase after. AT: “Try to live peacefully with everyone” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and also the holiness without which no one will see the Lord** - This can be expressed as a positive encouragement. AT: “and also work hard to be holy, because only holy people will see the Lord” (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **also the holiness** - You can state clearly the understood information. AT: “also pursue the holiness” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **no one lacks God’s grace** - “no one receives God’s grace and then lets go of it” or “no one rejects God’s grace after first trusting in him”
- **that no root of bitterness grows up to cause trouble, so that many do not become polluted by it** - Hateful or resentful attitudes are spoken of as if they were a plant bitter to the taste. AT: “that no one becomes like a bitter root, which when it grows causes trouble and harms many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he was rejected** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “his father, Isaac, refused to bless him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **because he found no opportunity for repentance** - “because it was not possible for his father, Isaac, to change his decision”
- **even though he sought it with tears** - Here “he” refers to Esau.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 12:18-21****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> In coming to God, you have not experienced things like what the Israelite people experienced at Mount Sinai. They approached a mountain that God commanded them not to touch because he himself had come down to that mountain. They approached a blazing fire, and it was gloomy and dark, with a violent storm. <sup>19</sup> They heard a trumpet sound, and they heard God speak a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again. <sup>20</sup> For God had commanded them, "If a person or even an animal touches this mountain, you must kill him." The people were terrified. <sup>21</sup> Truly, because Moses was terrified after seeing what happened on the mountain, he said, "I am trembling because I am very afraid!"

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> For you have not come to a mountain that can be touched, a mountain of burning fire, darkness, gloom, and storm. <sup>19</sup> You have not come to a trumpet blast, nor to a voice that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them. <sup>20</sup> For they could not endure what was commanded: "If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned."<sup>[1]</sup>Some older versions read, "*If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow.*" <sup>21</sup> So fearful was this sight that Moses said, "I am terrified and am trembling."

**translationWords:**

- fire
- darkness
- trumpet
- voice
- beg, beggar
- endure, endurance
- command, to command, commandment
- stone, stoning
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Moses
- terror, terrify
- tremble

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The author gives a contrast between what believers in Moses' time had while living under the law and what present day believers have after coming to Jesus under the new covenant. He illustrates the experience of the Israelites by describing how God appeared to them at Mount Sinai.

- **General Information:** - The words “you” and “You” refer to the Hebrew believers to whom the author wrote. The word “they” refers to people of Israel after Moses led them out of Egypt. The first quotation comes from the writings of Moses. God reveals in this passage in Hebrews that Moses said he shook at seeing the mountain.
- **For you have not come to a mountain that can be touched** - The implicit information can be stated explicitly. AT: “For you have not come, as the people of Israel came, to a mountain that can be touched” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **that can be touched** - This means that believers in Christ have not come to a physical mountain like Mount Sinai that a person can touch or see. This can be stated in active form. AT: “that a person can touch” or “that people can perceive with their senses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **You have not come to a trumpet blast** - “You have not come to a place where there is the loud sound of a trumpet”
- **nor to a voice that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them** - Here “voice” refers to someone speaking. The phrase “be spoken” can be stated in active form. AT: “or where God was speaking in such a way that those who heard him begged him not to speak another word to them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **what was commanded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “what God commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **it must be stoned** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must stone it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 12:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Instead, you have come to the presence of God who truly lives in heaven, to the “New Jerusalem.” That is like what your ancestors did when they came to worship God on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which the earthly Jerusalem was built. You have come to where there are countless angels who are rejoicing as they have gathered together. <sup>23</sup> You have joined the assembly of all the believers who have privileges as firstborn sons, whose names God has written down in heaven. You have come to God, who will judge everyone. You have come to where the spirits of God’s people are, people who lived righteously before they died, and whom God has now made perfect in heaven. <sup>24</sup> You have come to Jesus, who arranged a new covenant between us and God by the blood that flowed when he died on the cross. Jesus’ blood made it possible for God to forgive us, and his blood is better for us than Abel’s blood.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Instead, you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to tens of thousands of angels in celebration. <sup>23</sup> You have come to the congregation of the firstborn, who have been registered in heaven. You have come to God, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the righteous ones who have been made perfect. <sup>24</sup> And you have come to Jesus, the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks better than Abel’s blood.

**translationWords:**

- Zion, Mount Zion
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Jerusalem
- angel, archangel
- firstborn
- judge
- spirit, spiritual
- righteous, righteousness
- perfect
- mediator
- new covenant
- Abel

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The man Abel was the son of the first man and woman, Adam and Eve. Cain, also their son, murdered Abel.

- **Mount Zion** - The writer speaks of Mount Zion, the temple mount in Jerusalem, as if it were heaven itself, the residence of God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **tens of thousands of angels** - “an uncountable number of angels”
- **the firstborn** - This speaks of believers in Christ as if they were firstborn sons. This emphasizes their special place and privilege as God’s people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **registered in heaven** - “whose names are written in heaven.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “whose names God has written in heaven” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the mediator of a new covenant** - This means Jesus caused the new covenant between God and humans to exist. See how you translated this phrase in [9:15](#).
- **who have been made perfect** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God has made perfect” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the sprinkled blood that speaks better than Abel’s blood** - The blood of Jesus and the blood of Abel are both spoken of as if they were two persons calling out. AT: “the sprinkled blood of Jesus that says better things than the blood of Abel” (See: [Personification](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **blood** - Here “blood” stands for Jesus’ death, as Abel’s blood stands for his death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 12:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Beware that you do not refuse to listen to God who is speaking to you. The Israelite people did not escape God punishing them when Moses warned them here on earth. So we shall surely not escape God punishing us if we reject him when he warns us from heaven! <sup>26</sup> The earth shook when he spoke at Mount Sinai. But now he has promised, “I will shake the earth again, one more time, and I will shake the heavens, too.”

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> See that you do not refuse the one who is speaking. For if they did not escape when they refused the one who warned them on earth, much less will we escape if we turn away from the one who is warning from heaven. <sup>26</sup> At one time, his voice shook the earth. But now he has promised and said, “One more time I will shake not only the earth, but also the heavens.”

**translationWords:**

- earth, earthly
- turn, turn away, turn back
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- voice
- promise

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having contrasted the Israelites’ experience at Mount Sinai with the believers’ experience after Christ died, the writer reminds believers that they have the same God who warns them today. This is the fifth main warning given to believers.
- **General Information:** - This quotation is from the prophet Haggai in the Old Testament. The word “you” continues to refer to believers. The word “we” continues to refer to the writer and the readers who are believers. (See: **Forms of You** and **Inclusive “We”**)
- **you do not refuse the one who is speaking** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “you pay attention to the one who is speaking” (See: **Double Negatives**)
- **if they did not escape** - The implicit information can be stated explicitly. AT: “if the people of Israel did not escape judgment” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **the one who warned them on earth** - Possible meanings are 1) “Moses who warned them here on earth” or 2) “God who warned them at Mount Sinai”
- **if we turn away from the one who is warning** - Disobeying God is spoken of as if a person were turning and walking away from him. AT: “if we disobey the one who is warning” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **his voice shook the earth** - “when God spoke, the sound of his voice caused the earth to shake”
- **shook ... shake** - Use the word for what an earthquake does in moving the ground. This refers back to [12:18-21](#) and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 12:27-29

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> The words “again, one more time” indicate that God will remove those things on earth that he will shake, everything that he has created. He will do this in order that the things in heaven that cannot shake may remain forever. <sup>28</sup> So let us thank God that we are becoming members of a kingdom that nothing can shake. Let us worship God by gratefully thanking him and by being greatly in awe of his great power and love. <sup>29</sup> Remember that the God we worship is like a fire that burns up everything that is impure!

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> These words, “One more time,” mean the removal of those things that can be shaken, that is, of the things that have been created, so that the things that cannot be shaken will remain. <sup>28</sup> Therefore, receiving a kingdom that cannot be shaken, let us be grateful and in this manner worship God with reverence and awe. <sup>29</sup> For our God is a consuming fire.

### translationWords:

- create, creation, Creator
- kingdom
- worship
- God
- reverence
- awe, awesome
- consume
- fire

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here the quotation from the prophet Haggai is repeated from the previous verse.
- **the removal of those things that can be shaken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will remove all things that shake” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **shaken** - Use the word for what an earthquake does in moving the ground. This refers back to [12:18-21](#) and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God. See how you translated “shook” and “shake” in [12:26](#).
- **that have been created** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God has created” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the things that cannot shaken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the things that do not shake” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **receiving a kingdom** - You can add the words “because we are” to make clear the logical connection between this statement and the next statement. AT: “because we are receiving a kingdom” or “because God is making us members of his kingdom” (See: [Connecting Words](#))
- **that cannot be shaken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that does not shake” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **let us be grateful** - “let us give thanks”
- **with reverence and awe** - The words “reverence” and “awe” share similar meanings and emphasize the greatness of reverence due to God. AT: “with great respect and dread” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **our God is a consuming fire** - God is spoken of here as if he were a fire that can burn up anything. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 12 Translation Questions](#)

## **Hebrews 13 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 13:6, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

This chapter continues a series of exhortations to Christians that began in chapter 12. These commands are not always connected to each other, therefore the translator should not feel obliged to make smooth transitions between subjects.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **“Welcome angels”**

The exact meaning of this phrase is unknown. It is possibly a reference to Abraham entertaining angels (Genesis 18). The Greek word for “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” This would give the phrase the meaning that any stranger may be a messenger or servant of God, so hospitality should be shown to them.

#### **Links:**

- [Hebrews 13:01 Notes](#)

**Hebrews 13:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Continue to love your fellow believers. <sup>2</sup> Do not forget to be hospitable to needy travelers. By caring for strangers, some people have welcomed angels into their home without knowing it.

**ULB:**

**13** <sup>1</sup> Let brotherly love continue. <sup>2</sup> Do not forget hospitality for strangers. For through this, some have shown hospitality to angels without knowing it.

**translationWords:**

- [brother](#)
- [love](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - In this closing section, the author gives specific instructions to believers on how they are supposed to live.
- **Let brotherly love continue** - “Continue to show your love for other believers as you would for a member of your family”
- **Do not forget** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “Be sure to remember” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **hospitality for strangers** - “to welcome and show kindness to strangers”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 13:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Remember to help those who are in prison because they are believers, as though you were in prison with them and were suffering physically as they are doing.

<sup>4</sup> Men and women who are married to each other must respect each other, and they must be faithful to each other. God will surely condemn those who act immorally or adulterously.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Remember prisoners, as if you were bound with them. Remember those who are mistreated, as if you also were them in the body. <sup>4</sup> Let marriage be respected by everyone. Let the marriage bed be pure, for God will judge the sexually immoral people and adulterers.

**translationWords:**

- prison, prisoner, imprison
- bind, bond, bound
- pure, purify, purification
- judge, judgment
- sexual immorality
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

**translationNotes:**

- **as if you were bound with them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as if you were in prison with them” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **who are mistreated** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom others are mistreating” or “who are suffering” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **as if you also were them in the body** - This phrase encourages believers to think about other people’s suffering as they would think about their own suffering. AT: “as if you were the one suffering” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Let marriage be respected by everyone** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Men and women who are married to each other must respect each other” (UDB) (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Let the marriage bed be pure** - This refers to the act of sexual union as if it were only the bed of a married couple. AT: “Let husbands and wives honor their marriage relationship to one another and not sleep with other people” (See: **Euphemism** and **Metonymy**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 13:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Live without constantly wanting money, and be happy no matter how much or little you own. Remember what Moses wrote that God said:

”I will never leave you;

I will never stop providing for you.”

<sup>6</sup> So we can say confidently as the Psalmist said,

“Since the Lord is the one who helps me, I will not be afraid! People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Let your conduct be free from the love of money. Be content with the things you have, for God himself has said, “I will never leave you, nor will I forsake you.” <sup>6</sup> Let us be content so that we may have courage to say,

”The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid.

What can a man do to me?”

**translationWords:**

- free, freedom, liberty
- love
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- courage, courageous
- Lord

**translationNotes:**

- **Let your conduct be free from the love of money** - “Do not love money”
- **Be content** - “Be satisfied”
- **The Lord is my helper ... do to me** - This is a quotation from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I will not be afraid. What can a man do to me?** - The author uses a question to emphasize that he does not fear people because God is helping him. Here “man” means any person in general. AT: “I will not fear what any person can do to me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question and When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 13:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Your spiritual leaders have told you the message about Christ. Remember how they have conducted their lives and imitate how they have trusted in Christ. <sup>8</sup> Jesus Christ is the same now as he always has been, and he will be the same forever.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Consider your leaders, those who spoke God's word to you, and consider the result of their conduct. Imitate their faith. <sup>8</sup> Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- imitate, imitator
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **the result of their conduct** - “the outcome of the way they behave”
- **Imitate their faith** - Here the trust in God and the way of life led by these leaders are spoken of as “their faith.” AT: “Trust and obey God in the same way they do” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **is the same yesterday, today, and forever** - Here “yesterday” means all times in the past. AT: “is the same in the past, the present, and in the future forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 13:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So do not let other people persuade you to believe other things about God, strange things that you have not learned from us. For example, do not let anything make you obey various rules about what to eat and not to eat. These rules cannot help us.

<sup>10</sup> Those who serve in the sacred tent have no right to eat at the sacred altar where we worship Christ. <sup>11</sup> After the high priest brings into the very holy place the blood of animals that they have sacrificed to atone for sins, other people burn the bodies of those animals outside the camp.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Do not be carried away by various strange teachings. For it is good that the heart should be strengthened by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them. <sup>10</sup> We have an altar from which those who serve in the tabernacle have no right to eat. <sup>11</sup> For the blood of the animals killed for sins is brought by the high priest into the holy place, while their bodies are burned outside the camp.

**translationWords:**

- heart
- grace, gracious
- walk
- altar
- serve, service
- tabernacle
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- high priest
- holy place, most holy place

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - This section refers to animal sacrifices made by believers in God in Old Testament times, which covered their sins temporarily until the death of Christ came about.
- **Do not be carried away by various strange teachings** - Being persuaded by various teachings is spoken of as if a person were being carried away by a force. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Do not let others persuade you to believe their various strange teachings" (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)
- **various strange teachings** - "many, different teachings that are not the good news we told you"

- **it is good that the heart should be strengthened by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “we become stronger when we think of how God has been kind to us, but we do not become stronger by obeying rules about food” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the heart should be strengthened** - Here “the heart” stands for a person’s courage, love, and determination. These things are said to be strengthened as if they were a person’s heart. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **foods** - Here “foods” stands for rules about food. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **those who walk by them** - Living is spoken of as if it were walking. AT: “those who live by them” or “those who regulate their lives by them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **We have an altar** - Here “altar” stands for “place of worship.” It also stands for the animals that the priests in the old covenant sacrificed, from which they took meat for themselves and their families. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the blood of the animals killed for sins is brought by the high priest into the holy place** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the high priest brings into the holy place the blood of the animals that the priests killed for sins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **while their bodies are burned** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “while the priests burned the animals’ bodies” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **outside the camp** - “away from where the people lived”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 13:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Similarly, Jesus suffered and died outside the gates of Jerusalem in order that he might make us, his people, special for God. He did this by offering his own blood as a sacrifice for our sins.

<sup>13</sup> So we must go to Jesus to be saved; we must allow others to insult us just like people insulted him. <sup>14</sup> Here on earth, we believers do not have a city such as Jerusalem. Instead, we are waiting for the heavenly city that will last forever.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> So Jesus also suffered outside the city gate, in order to sanctify the people through his own blood.

<sup>13</sup> Let us therefore go to him outside the camp, bearing his shame. <sup>14</sup> For we do not have any permanent city here. Instead, we are looking for one that is to come.

### translationWords:

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- suffer, suffering
- gate, gate bar
- sanctify, sanctification
- blood
- shame, shameful, ashamed

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - There is a comparison here between Jesus' sacrifice and the tabernacle sacrifices of the Old Testament.
- **So** - "In the same way" or "Because the bodies of the sacrifices were burned outside the camp" (13:11)
- **outside the city gate** - This stands for "outside the city." (See: **Metonymy**)
- **Let us therefore go to him outside the camp** - Obeying Jesus is spoken of as if a person were leaving the camp to go out where Jesus is. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **bearing his shame** - Disgrace is spoken of as if it were an object that had to be carried in one's hands or on one's back. AT: "while allowing others to insult us just like people insulted him" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **looking for** - "waiting for" (UDB)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 13:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Because Jesus has died for us, we must continually praise God no matter what happens. That will be something we can sacrifice to him instead of animals. We must be ready to openly say to others that we trust in Christ.

<sup>16</sup> Always be doing good deeds for others and sharing the things you have, because doing things like that will be as though you are offering sacrifices that will please God.

<sup>17</sup> Obey your leaders and do what they tell you, since they are the ones who are guarding your welfare. Some day they will have to stand before God so that he can say if he approves of what they have done. Obey them in order that they can do the work of guarding you joyfully and not have to do it sadly, because if you cause them to do it sadly, that will certainly not help you at all.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Through him, then, let us always offer up sacrifices of praise to God, praise that is the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name. <sup>16</sup> And let us not forget doing good and helping one another, for it is with such sacrifices that God is very pleased. <sup>17</sup> Obey and submit to your leaders, for they keep watch over your souls, as those who will give account. Obey so that your leaders will do this with joy, and not with groaning, which would be useless to you.

### translationWords:

- praise
- fruit, fruitful
- acknowledge
- name
- obey, obedient, obedience
- submit, in submission
- watch, watchman
- soul
- joy, joyful
- groan

### translationNotes:

- **sacrifices of praise** - Praise is spoken of as if it were a sacrifice of animals or incense. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **praise that is the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name** - Praise is spoken of as if it were fruit, and “lips” are spoken of as if they were trees bearing that fruit. In addition, “lips” represents people praising the Lord. AT: “praise that is an offering from those who acknowledge his name” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **his name** - A person’s name represents that person. AT: “him” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **let us not forget doing good and helping one another** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “let us always remember to do good and help others” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **with such sacrifices** - Doing good and helping others is spoken of as if they were sacrifices on an altar. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **keep watch over your souls** - The believers’ souls, that is, the believers’ spiritual well-being, are spoken of as if they were objects or animals that guards could keep watch over. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **not with groaning** - Here “groaning” stands for sadness or grief. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 13:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Pray for me and those with me. I am certain that I have not done anything that displeases God. I have tried to act well toward you in every way. <sup>19</sup> I urge you earnestly to pray that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Pray for us, for we are persuaded that we have a clean conscience and that we desire to live rightly in all things. <sup>19</sup> I encourage you even more to do this, so that I will be returned to you sooner.

### translationWords:

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [conscience](#)
- [encourage, encouragement](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The author closes with a blessing and greetings.
- **Pray for us** - Here “us” refers to the author and his companions. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **we are persuaded that we have a clean conscience** - Here “clean” stands for being free from guilt. AT: “we are certain that we have no guilt” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that I will be returned to you sooner** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 13:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Jesus provides for us, protects us, and guides us as a great shepherd does for his sheep. And God, who gives us inner peace, raised our Lord Jesus from the dead. By doing that God confirmed his eternal covenant with us by the blood that flowed from Christ when he died on the cross. <sup>21</sup> So I pray that God may equip you with everything good that you may do what he desires. May he accomplish in us what pleases him, as he watches us follow Jesus, who offered up himself for us. May all people praise Jesus Christ forever. Amen!

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Now may the God of peace, who brought back from the dead ones the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, by the blood of an everlasting covenant, <sup>21</sup> perfect you with every good thing to do his will. May he work in us what is well pleasing before him, through Jesus Christ, to whom be the glory forever. Amen.

**translationWords:**

- God
- peace, peaceful
- shepherd, to shepherd
- sheep, ram, ewe
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- blood
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- covenant
- perfect
- will of God
- glory, glorious
- forever
- amen, truly

**translationNotes:**

- **Now** - This marks a new section of the letter. Here the author praises God and gives a final prayer for his readers.
- **the great shepherd of the sheep** - Christ in his role of leader and protector of those who believe in him is spoken of as if he were a shepherd of sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **by the blood of an everlasting covenant** - Here “blood” stands for the death of Jesus, which is the basis for the covenant that will last forever between God and all believers in Christ. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **perfect you with every good thing to do his will** - Here “perfect you” means “make you capable” or “equip you.” AT: “make you capable of doing every good thing according to his will”
- **May he work in us** - The word “us” refers to the author and the readers. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **to whom be the glory forever** - “whom all people will praise forever”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## Hebrews 13:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> My fellow believers, since this is a short letter that I have written to you, I ask you that you patiently consider what I have just written to encourage you.

<sup>23</sup> I want you to know that our fellow believer Timothy has gone free from prison. If he comes here soon, he will accompany me when I go to see you.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> Now I encourage you, brothers, to bear with the word of encouragement that I have briefly written to you. <sup>23</sup> Know that our brother Timothy has been set free, with whom I will see you if he comes soon.

### translationWords:

- [encourage, encouragement](#)
- [brother](#)
- [word](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Now** - This marks a new section of the letter. Here the author gives his final comments to his audience.
- **brothers** - This refers to all the believers to whom he is writing whether male or female. AT: “fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **bear with the word of encouragement** - “patiently consider what I have just written to encourage you” (UDB)
- **the word of encouragement** - Here “word” stands for a message. AT: “the encouraging message” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **has been set free** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “is no longer in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

**Hebrews 13:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Tell all your spiritual leaders and all your other fellow believers who belong to God in your city that I greet them. The believers in this area who have come from Italy greet you also.

<sup>25</sup> May God continue to love you and protect you by his kindness.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Greet all your leaders and all the believers. Those from Italy greet you.

<sup>25</sup> May grace be with you all.

**translationWords:**

- [believer](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Those from Italy greet you** - Possible meanings are 1) the author is not in Italy, but there is a group of believers with him who have come from Italy or 2) the author is in Italy while writing this letter.
- **Italy** - This is the name of a region at that time. Rome was the then-capital city of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Hebrews](#)
- [Hebrews 13 General Notes](#)
- [Hebrews 13 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Hebrews 1

Q? How has God spoken in the past?

A. God has spoken in the past through the prophets at many times and in many ways. [1:1]

---

Q? How has God spoken in these recent days?

A. God has spoken in these recent days through a Son. [1:2]

---

Q? Through whom was the universe made?

A. The universe was made through the Son of God. [1:2]

---

Q? How are all things sustained?

A. All things are sustained by the word of the Son of God's power. [1:3]

---

Q? How does the Son display the glory and essence of God?

A. The Son is the radiance of God's glory, and the character of God's essence. [1:3]

---

Q? How does the Son of God compare to the angels?

A. The Son of God is superior to the angels. [1:4]

---

Q? What did God command the angels to do when the Son was brought into the world?

A. God commanded the angels to worship the Son when the Son was brought into the world. [1:6]

---

**Q?** How long will the Son rule as a king?

**A.** The Son will rule as a king for ever and ever. [1:8]

---

**Q?** What does the Son love and what does the Son hate?

**A.** The Son loves righteousness and the Son hates lawlessness. [1:9]

---

**Q?** What will happen to the earth and heavens over time?

**A.** The earth and heavens will wear out like a garment and perish. [1:10-11]

---

**Q?** Where did God tell the Son to sit, and until what happened?

**A.** God told the Son to sit at his right hand until God made the Son's enemies a stool for the Son's feet. [1:13]

---

**Q?** For whom do the angels care?

**A.** The angels care for those who are about to inherit salvation. [1:14]

---

## Hebrews 2

**Q?** Why must believers pay attention to what they have heard?

**A.** Believers must pay attention to what they have heard so that they do not drift away from it. [2:1]

---

**Q?** What does every transgression and disobedience receive?

**A.** Every transgression and disobedience receives just punishment. [2:2]

---

**Q?** How did God testify to the message of salvation announced by the Lord?

**A.** God testified to the message by signs, wonders, powerful deeds, and by the gifts of the Holy Spirit. [2:4]

---

**Q?** Who will not rule the world to come?

**A.** Angels will not rule the world to come. [2:5]

---

**Q?** Who will rule the world to come?

**A.** Man will rule the world to come. [2:7-8]

---

**Q?** Why was Jesus crowned with glory and honor?

**A.** Jesus was crowned with glory and honor because of his suffering and death. [2:9]

---

**Q?** For whom did Jesus taste death?

**A.** Jesus tasted death for every man. [2:9]

---

**Q?** Who does God plan to bring to glory?

**A.** God plans to bring many sons to glory. [2:10]

---

**Q?** Who both come from the one source, God?

**A.** Both the one who sanctifies and those who are sanctified come from the one source, God. [2:11]

---

**Q?** Who was made ineffective through Jesus' death?

**A.** The devil was made ineffective through Jesus' death. [2:14]

---

**Q?** From what slavery are people freed through the death of Jesus?

**A.** Through the death of Jesus, people are freed from the fear of death. [2:15]

---

**Q?** Why was it necessary for Jesus to be like his brothers in all ways?

**A.** It was necessary so that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest over God's things, and so he might achieve forgiveness for the people's sins. [2:17]

---

**Q?** Why is Jesus able to help those who are tempted?

**A.** Jesus is able to help those who are tempted because he was tempted also. [2:18]

---

### Hebrews 3

**Q?** What two titles does the author of the book of Hebrews give Jesus?

**A.** The author gives Jesus the titles Apostle and High Priest. [3:1]

---

**Q?** Why has Jesus been considered worthy of greater glory than Moses?

**A.** Jesus has been considered worthy of greater glory because while Moses was faithful in all God's house, Jesus is the one who built the house. [3:2-3]

---

**Q?** What was Moses' role in God's house?

**A.** Moses was a servant in God's house. [3:5]

---

**Q?** About what did Moses give testimony?

**A.** Moses gave testimony about the things that were to be spoken of in the future. [3:5]

---

**Q?** What is Jesus' role in God's house?

**A.** Jesus is the Son in charge of God's house. [3:6]

---

**Q?** Who is God's house?

**A.** The believers are God's house if they hold fast their confidence. [3:6]

---

**Q?** What did the Israelites in the wilderness do when they heard God's voice?

**A.** The Israelites hardened their hearts. [3:7-8]

---

**Q?** What did God swear concerning the Israelites who went astray in their hearts?

**A.** God swore that they would not enter his rest. [3:10-11]

---

**Q?** Of what are the brothers warned to be careful?

**A.** The brothers are warned to be careful not to turn away from the living God by unbelief. [3:12]

---

**Q?** What are the brothers to do in order to avoid being hardened by the deceitfulness of sin?

**A.** The brothers are to encourage one another daily. [3:13]

---

**Q?** As partners of Christ, what must believers do?

**A.** As partners of Christ, believers must firmly hold their confidence in him from the beginning to the end. [3:14]

---

**Q?** With whom was God angry for forty years?

**A.** God was angry with those who sinned in the wilderness. [3:17]

---

**Q?** What happened to those with whom God was angry?

**A.** Their dead bodies lay in the wilderness. [3:17]

---

**Q?** Why were the disobedient Israelites not able to enter God's rest?

**A.** They were not able to enter God's rest because of unbelief. [3:19]

---

## Hebrews 4

**Q?** What good news had the believers and the Israelites both heard?

**A.** The believers and the Israelites had both heard the good news about God's rest. [4:2]

---

**Q?** Why did the good news not benefit the Israelites?

**A.** The good news did not benefit the Israelites because they did not join faith to it. [4:2]

---

**Q?** Who are the ones who enter God's rest?

**A.** Those who have believed enter God's rest. [4:3]

---

**Q?** When did God finish his created works and then rest?

**A.** God finished his created works at the beginning of the world and then rested on the seventh day. [4:3-4]

---

**Q?** What did God say about the Israelites and his rest?

**A.** God said that the Israelites would not enter his rest. [4:5]

---

**Q?** What day has God now set for people to enter his rest?

**A.** God has set "Today" as the day for people to enter his rest. [4:7]

---

**Q?** What must a person do in order to enter God's rest?

**A.** A person must listen to God's voice and not harden his heart. [4:7]

---

**Q?** What is still reserved for God's people?

**A.** A sabbath rest is still reserved for God's people. [4:9]

---

**Q?** A person who enters God's rest also rests from what?

**A.** A person who enters God's rest also rests from his deeds. [4:10]

---

**Q?** Why should believers be eager to enter God's rest?

**A.** Believers should be eager to enter God's rest so that they do not fall as the Israelites did. [4:11]

---

**Q?** What is the word of God sharper than?

**A.** The word of God is sharper than any two-edged sword. [4:12]

---

**Q?** What is the word of God able to divide?

**A.** The word of God is able to divide soul from spirit, and joints from marrow. [4:12]

---

**Q?** What is the word of God able to discern?

**A.** The word of God is able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart. [4:12]

---

**Q?** Who is hidden from God's sight?

**A.** No created thing is hidden from God's sight. [4:13]

---

**Q?** Who serves as the great high priest for believers?

**A.** Jesus the Son of God serves as the great high priest for believers. [4:14]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why does Jesus feel sympathy for the weaknesses of believers?

**A.** Jesus feels sympathy for the weaknesses of believers because he was in all ways tempted. [4:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many times did Jesus sin?

**A.** Jesus was without sin. [4:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** In time of need, what are believers to do to receive mercy and find grace?

**A.** In time of need, believers are to come up with confidence to the throne of grace. [4:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Hebrews 5

**Q?** What does every high priest do on behalf of the people?

**A.** For the people, every high priest offers gifts and sacrifices for sins. [5:1]

---

**Q?** In addition to the people, for whom does the high priest also present sacrifices?

**A.** The high priest also presents sacrifices for his sins. [5:3]

---

**Q?** How does a man receive the honor of being a high priest of God?

**A.** A man must be called by God to be a high priest of God. [5:4]

---

**Q?** Who declared Christ to be a high priest?

**A.** God declared Christ to be a high priest. [5:5]

---

**Q?** For how long is Christ God's high priest?

**A.** Christ is God's high priest forever. [5:6]

---

**Q?** Of what order is Christ as a high priest?

**A.** Christ is a high priest of the order of Melchizedek. [5:6]

---

**Q?** Why was Christ heard by God when he prayed?

**A.** Christ was heard by God because he revered God. [5:7]

---

**Q?** How did Christ learn obedience?

**A.** Christ learned obedience from the things he suffered. [5:8]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** For whom did Christ become the cause of eternal salvation?

**A.** For everyone who obeys him, Christ became the cause of their eternal salvation. [5:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was the spiritual condition of the original readers of this letter?

**A.** The original readers were dull of hearing. [5:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How does the author of the letter say that believers grow from spiritual babies into full-grown adults?

**A.** Believers grow spiritually by practicing distinguishing right from wrong, discerning both good and evil. [5:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

## Hebrews 6

**Q?** On to what does the author of Hebrews want the believers to press?

**A.** The author of Hebrews wants the believers to press on to maturity. [6:1]

---

**Q?** What teachings does the author list as the foundation of the message of Christ?

**A.** The foundational teachings are repentance from dead works, faith in God, baptisms, laying on of hands, the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment. [6:1-2]

---

**Q?** What is impossible for those who were sharers in the Holy Spirit, but then fell away, to do?

**A.** It is impossible for those who were sharers in the Holy Spirit, but then fell away, to be restored again to repentance. [6:4-6]

---

**Q?** What had these enlightened people tasted?

**A.** These enlightened people had tasted the heavenly gift, God's word, and the powers of the age to come. [6:4-5]

---

**Q?** Why are these people not able to be restored to repentance?

**A.** They are not able to be restored because they have crucified for themselves the very Son of God. [6:6]

---

**Q?** In the author's analogy, what happens to land that receives rain but bears thorns and thistles?

**A.** Land that receives rain but bears thorns and thistles has its end in burning. [6:7-8]

---

**Q?** What is the author's expectation concerning the believers to whom he is writing?

**A.** The author expects better things concerning these believers, things that are about salvation. [6:9]

---

---

**Q?** What will God not forget about these believers?

**A.** God will not forget their work, love, and service to the saints. [6:10]

---

**Q?** What should the believers imitate about those who inherit the promises of God?

**A.** The believers should imitate the faith and patience of those who inherit the promises of God. [6:12]

---

**Q?** What did Abraham have to do in order to obtain what God promised him?

**A.** Abraham had to wait patiently to obtain what God promised him. [6:13-15]

---

**Q?** Why did God guarantee his promise with an oath?

**A.** God guaranteed his promise with an oath to show more clearly the unchangeable quality of his purpose. [6:17]

---

**Q?** What is it impossible for God to do?

**A.** It is impossible for God to lie. [6:18]

---

**Q?** What does the believer's confidence in God do for his soul?

**A.** The believer's confidence in God is a secure and reliable anchor for his soul. [6:19]

---

**Q?** Where did Jesus enter as the forerunner for the believers?

**A.** Jesus entered into the inner place behind the curtain as the forerunner for the believers. [6:20]

---

## Hebrews 7

**Q?** What two titles did Melchizedek have?

**A.** Melchizedek was king of Salem and priest of God Most High. [7:1]

---

**Q?** What did Abraham give Melchizedek?

**A.** Abraham gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything he had captured. [7:2]

---

**Q?** What does the name Melchizedek mean?

**A.** The name Melchizedek means “king of righteousness” and “king of peace”. [7:2]

---

**Q?** Who were the ancestors of Melchizedek, and when did he die?

**A.** Melchizedek was without ancestors and has no end of life. [7:3]

---

**Q?** From whom are the priests descended, who are priests according to the Law, and who collect tithes from the people?

**A.** The priests of the Law are descended from Levi and Abraham. [7:5]

---

**Q?** Who was the greater person, Abraham or Melchizedek?

**A.** Melchizedek was the greater person because he blessed Abraham [7:7]

---

**Q?** In what way did Levi himself also pay tithes to Melchizedek?

**A.** Levi also paid tithes to Melchizedek because Levi was in the genitals of Abraham when Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek. [7:9-10]

---

**Q?** Why was there a need for another priest to arise after the order of Melchizedek?

**A.** There was a need for another priest to arise after the order of Melchizedek because perfection was not possible through the Levitical priesthood. [7:11]

---

**Q?** What must also be changed when the priesthood changes?

**A.** The law must be changed when the priesthood changes. [7:12]

---

**Q?** From which tribe did Jesus descend, and had this tribe served before at the altar as priests?

**A.** Jesus descended from the tribe of Judah, which had never served before at the altar as priests. [7:14]

---

**Q?** On what basis did Jesus become a priest after the order of Melchizedek?

**A.** Jesus became a priest after the order of Melchizedek based on the power of an indestructible life. [7:16]

---

**Q?** What has been set aside because it is weak and useless?

**A.** The former commandment, the Law, has been set aside because it is weak and useless. [7:18-19]

---

**Q?** What oath did God swear concerning Jesus?

**A.** God swore that Jesus would be a priest forever. [7:21]

---

**Q?** Of what is Jesus the guarantee?

**A.** Jesus is the guarantee of a better covenant. [7:22]

---

**Q?** Why is Jesus able to completely save those who draw near to God through him?

**A.** Jesus is able to completely save those who draw near to God through him because he always lives to intercede for them. [7:25]

---

**Q?** What four attributes does Jesus have that make him the right priest for believers?

**A.** Jesus is sinless, blameless, pure, and separated from sinners. [7:26]

---

**Q?** What offering did Jesus make for the sins of the people?

**A.** Jesus offered up himself once for the sins of the people. [7:27]

---

**Q?** What offering did Jesus need to make for his own sins?

**A.** Jesus did not need to make any offering for his own sins because he is sinless. [7:26]

---

**Q?** How is Jesus different from the priests who were appointed through the Law?

**A.** The priests who were appointed through the Law were weak, but Jesus has been made perfect forever. [7:28]

---

**Hebrews 8**

**Q?** Where is the believers' high priest sitting?

**A.** The believers' high priest is sitting at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens.

[8:1]

---

**Q?** Where is the true tabernacle?

**A.** The true tabernacle is in the heavens. [8:2]

---

**Q?** What is necessary for every priest to have?

**A.** Every priest must have something to offer. [8:3]

---

**Q?** Where were the priests who offered gifts according to the Law?

**A.** The priests who offered gifts according to the Law were on the earth. [8:4]

---

**Q?** What did the priests on earth serve?

**A.** The priests on earth served a copy and shadow of the heavenly things. [8:5]

---

**Q?** According to what pattern was the earthly tabernacle built?

**A.** The earthly tabernacle was built according to the pattern God showed Moses on the mountain.

[8:5]

---

**Q?** Why does Christ have a superior priestly ministry?

**A.** Christ has a superior priestly ministry because he is the mediator of a better covenant, established on better promises. [8:6]

---

---

**Q?** What did God promise when he found fault with the people under the first covenant?

**A.** God promised to make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah. [8:8]

---

**Q?** What did God say he would do in the new covenant?

**A.** God said he would put his laws into the people's minds, and write them on their hearts. [8:10]

---

**Q?** In the new covenant, who would know the Lord?

**A.** In the new covenant, all would know the Lord, from the least to the greatest. [8:11]

---

**Q?** What did God say he would do with the people's sins in the new covenant?

**A.** God said he would remember the people's sins no more. [8:12]

---

**Q?** In announcing a new covenant, what did God make the first covenant?

**A.** In announcing a new covenant, God made the first covenant old and ready to disappear. [8:13]

---

**Hebrews 9**

**Q?** What was the place of worship for the first covenant?

**A.** The place of worship for the first covenant was the tabernacle on earth. [9:1-2]

---

**Q?** What was located in the holy place of the earthly tabernacle?

**A.** In the holy place of the earthly tabernacle were the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence. [9:2]

---

**Q?** What was located in the most holy place of the earthly tabernacle?

**A.** In the most holy place of the earthly tabernacle were the altar for incense and the ark of the covenant. [9:4]

---

**Q?** How often did the high priest enter the most holy place, and what did he do before he entered?

**A.** The high priest entered the most holy place once each year, after making a blood sacrifice for himself and the people. [9:7]

---

**Q?** What served as an illustration in the present time for the readers of this letter?

**A.** The earthly tabernacle and the gifts and sacrifices being offered there served as an illustration in the present time. [9:9]

---

**Q?** What were the offerings of the earthly tabernacle not able to do?

**A.** The offerings of the earthly tabernacle were not able to perfect the worshiper's conscience. [9:9]

---

**Q?** Until when were the regulations of the earthly tabernacle provided?

**A.** The regulations of the earthly tabernacle were provided until the new order would be put in place. [9:10]

---

---

**Q?** What is different about the sacred tent in which Christ serves?

**A.** The sacred tent in which Christ serves is more perfect, is not made by human hands, and does not belong to this created world. [9:11]

---

**Q?** What offering did Christ make, by which he entered the most holy place?

**A.** Christ made an offering of his own blood by which he entered the most holy place. [9:12]

---

**Q?** What did Christ's offering accomplish?

**A.** Christ's offering secured everlasting redemption for everyone. [9:12]

---

**Q?** What does Christ's blood do for the believer?

**A.** Christ's blood cleanses the believer's conscience from dead deeds in order to serve the living God. [9:14]

---

**Q?** Of what is Christ the mediator?

**A.** Christ is the mediator of a new covenant. [9:15]

---

**Q?** What is required in order for a will to be in force?

**A.** A death is required in order for a will to be in force. [9:17]

---

**Q?** What death was required for the first covenant?

**A.** The death of calves and goats was required for the first covenant. [9:18-19]

---

**Q?** What cannot happen without the shedding of blood?

**A.** Without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sins. [9:22]

---

**Q?** Where does Christ now appear on our behalf?

**A.** Christ now appears in heaven itself, in the presence of God, on our behalf. [9:24]

---

**Q?** How many times must Christ offer himself to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself?

**A.** Christ offers himself one time at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. [9:26]

---

**Q?** For every person, what happens after their death?

**A.** After every person dies, they face the judgment. [9:27]

---

**Q?** For what purpose will Christ appear a second time?

**A.** Christ will appear a second time for the salvation of those who wait patiently for him. [9:28]

---

## Hebrews 10

**Q?** What is the Law compared to the realities in Christ?

**A.** The Law is only a shadow of the realities in Christ. [10:1]

---

**Q?** Of what do the repeated sacrifices made through the Law remind the worshipers?

**A.** The repeated sacrifices made through the Law remind the worshipers of sins committed year after year. [10:3]

---

**Q?** What is it impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to do?

**A.** It is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins. [10:4]

---

**Q?** What did God prepare for Christ when Christ came into the world?

**A.** God prepared a body for Christ. [10:5]

---

**Q?** What practice did God set aside when Christ came into the world?

**A.** God set aside the first practice of the sacrifices offered according to the Law. [10:8]

---

**Q?** What practice did God establish when Christ came into the world?

**A.** God established the second practice of the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. [10:10]

---

**Q?** For what is Christ waiting as he sits at the right side of God?

**A.** Christ is waiting until his enemies are humbled and made a stool for his feet. [10:12-13]

---

**Q?** What has Christ done for those sanctified by his one offering?

**A.** Christ has perfected forever those who are sanctified by his one offering. [10:14]

---

**Q?** What is no longer required where there is forgiveness of sins?

**A.** Additional offerings are no longer required where there is forgiveness of sins. [10:18]

---

**Q?** Into what place can believers now enter by Jesus' blood?

**A.** Believers can now enter the most holy place by Jesus' blood. [10:19]

---

**Q?** What has been sprinkled and what has been washed in the believer?

**A.** The believer's heart has been sprinkled clean from an evil conscience, and his body has been washed with pure water. [10:22]

---

**Q?** To what must believers hold tightly?

**A.** Believers must hold tightly to the confession of their confident expectation. [10:23]

---

**Q?** What must believers do as they see the day drawing near?

**A.** Believers must encourage one another more and more as they see the day drawing near. [10:25]

---

**Q?** What is the expectation of those who deliberately go on sinning after receiving the knowledge of the truth?

**A.** The expectation of those who deliberately go on sinning after receiving the knowledge of the truth is judgment and a fire that consumes God's enemies. [10:26-27]

---

**Q?** What does the person deserve who treats the blood of Christ by which he was sanctified as something unholy?

**A.** The person who treats the blood of Christ by which he was sanctified as something unholy deserves punishment without mercy beyond the punishment given under the Law of Moses. [10:28-29]

---

**Q?** To whom does vengeance belong?

**A.** Vengeance belongs to the Lord. [10:30]

---

**Q?** How had the believers who received this letter reacted to the seizure of their possessions?

**A.** The believers had accepted with joy the seizure of their possessions, knowing they had a better and everlasting possession. [10:34]

---

**Q?** What does the believer need so he may receive what God has promised?

**A.** The believer needs confidence and patience so he may receive what God has promised. [10:35-36]

---

**Q?** How will the righteous live?

**A.** The righteous will live by faith. [10:38]

---

**Q?** What does God think of those who turn back?

**A.** God is not pleased with those who turn back. [10:38]

---

**Q?** What is the author's expectation for those who received this letter?

**A.** The author's expectation is that those who received this letter will have faith for keeping their souls. [10:39]

---

## Hebrews 11

**Q?** What attitude does a person of faith have toward God's promises that are yet to be fulfilled?

**A.** A person of faith confidently expects and has certainty toward God's promises that are yet to be fulfilled. [11:1]

---

**Q?** From what were the visible things of the universe created?

**A.** The visible things of the universe were not made out of things that were visible. [11:3]

---

**Q?** Why did God praise Abel for being righteous?

**A.** God praised Abel because Abel by faith offered God a more appropriate sacrifice than Cain did. [11:4]

---

**Q?** What must one who comes to God believe about God?

**A.** One who comes to God must believe that God exists and that he rewards those who seek him. [11:6]

---

**Q?** How did Noah demonstrate his faith?

**A.** Noah demonstrated his faith by building a ship to save his family according to God's warning. [11:7]

---

**Q?** What promise did Abraham and Sarah receive by faith?

**A.** Abraham and Sarah received by faith the power to conceive even when they were too old. [11:11]

---

**Q?** What did the ancestors of faith see from far off?

**A.** The ancestors of faith saw and welcomed God's promises from far off. [11:13]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the ancestors of faith consider themselves on the earth?

**A.** The ancestors of faith considered themselves strangers and aliens on the earth. [11:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What has God prepared for those of faith?

**A.** God has prepared a heavenly city for those of faith. [11:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Abraham believe God would be able to do even as he offered up Isaac his only son?

**A.** Abraham believed God would be able to raise up Isaac from the dead. [11:17-19]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Joseph prophesy by faith when his end was near?

**A.** Joseph prophesied of the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt when his end was near. [11:22]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Moses choose to do by faith when he had grown up?

**A.** Moses chose by faith to share mistreatment with God's people, considering the disgrace of following Christ as greater riches. [11:24-26]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Moses observe by faith in order to save the Israelites' firstborn sons?

**A.** Moses observed the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood by faith in order to save the Israelites' firstborn sons. [11:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Rahab do by faith which prevented her from perishing?

**A.** Rahab by faith received the spies in safety which prevented her from perishing. [11:31]

\_\_\_\_\_

---

**Q?** What did some of the ancestors of faith accomplish in war?

**A.** Some of the ancestors of faith conquered kingdoms, escaped the sword, became mighty in war, and caused foreign armies to flee. [11:33-34]

---

**Q?** What did some of the ancestors of faith suffer?

**A.** Some of the ancestors of faith suffered torture, mocking, whippings, chains, imprisonments, stoning, sawing in two, death, and destitution. [11:35-38]

---

**Q?** Despite the faith of these ancestors, what did they not receive in their earthly lives?

**A.** Despite the faith of these ancestors, they did not receive in their earthly lives what God had promised them. [11:39]

---

**Q?** With whom will the ancestors of faith receive the promises of God and be perfected?

**A.** The ancestors of faith will receive the promises of God and be perfected with the new covenant believers in Christ. [11:40]

---

## Hebrews 12

**Q?** Why should the believer throw off the sin that easily entangles him?

**A.** Since he is surrounded by such a large crowd of witnesses, the believer should throw off the sin that easily entangles him. [12:1]

---

**Q?** Why did Jesus endure the cross and despise its shame?

**A.** Jesus endured the cross and despised its shame for the joy that was set before him. [12:2]

---

**Q?** How can a believer avoid becoming weary or fainthearted?

**A.** By considering Jesus who endured hateful speech from sinners, a believer can avoid becoming weary or fainthearted. [12:3]

---

**Q?** What does the Lord do to those whom he loves and receives?

**A.** The Lord disciplines those whom he loves and receives. [12:6]

---

**Q?** What is a person who is without the Lord's discipline?

**A.** A person without the Lord's discipline is an illegitimate child and not God's child. [12:8]

---

**Q?** Why does God discipline his children?

**A.** God disciplines his children for their good so they can share in his holiness [12:10].

---

**Q?** What does discipline produce?

**A.** Discipline produces peaceful fruit of righteousness. [12:11]

---

**Q?** What should believers pursue with all people?

**A.** Believers should pursue peace with all people. [12:14]

---

**Q?** What must not grow up and cause trouble and pollute many?

**A.** A root of bitterness must not grow up and cause trouble and pollute many. [12:15]

---

**Q?** What happened to Esau when he desired to inherit the blessing with tears after selling his own birthright?

**A.** Esau was rejected when he desired to inherit the blessing with tears after selling his own birthright. [12:17]

---

**Q?** For what did the Israelites beg at the mountain where God spoke?

**A.** The Israelites begged that not another word be spoken to them. [12:19]

---

**Q?** To where do believers in Christ come instead of the mountain where the Israelites heard the voice of God?

**A.** Believers in Christ come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God. [12:22]

---

**Q?** To what assembly do believers in Christ come?

**A.** Believers in Christ come to the assembly of all the firstborn registered in heaven. [12:23]

---

**Q?** To whom do believers in Christ come?

**A.** Believer in Christ come to God the Judge of all, to the spirits of the righteous, and to Jesus. [12:23-24]

---

**Q?** What will happen to those who turn away from the one who warns them from heaven?

**A.** Those who turn away will not escape from God. [12:25]

---

**Q?** What has God promised to shake?

**A.** God has promised to shake the earth and the heavens. [12:26]

---

**Q?** What will the believers receive instead of the things that can be shaken?

**A.** The believers will receive a kingdom that cannot be shaken. [12:28]

---

**Q?** How should believers worship God?

**A.** Believers should worship God with reverence and awe. [12:28]

---

**Q?** Why should believers worship God in this way?

**A.** Believers should worship God in this way because he is a consuming fire. [12:29]

---

### Hebrews 13

**Q?** What have some done by welcoming strangers?

**A.** Some have welcomed angels without knowing it. [13:2]

---

**Q?** How should believers remember those in prison?

**A.** Believers should remember them as if they were in prison also, and as if their bodies were being mistreated also. [13:3]

---

**Q?** What must be respected by all?

**A.** Marriage must be respected by all. [13:4]

---

**Q?** What does God do with the sexually immoral and adulterers?

**A.** God judges the sexually immoral and adulterers. [13:4]

---

**Q?** How can a believer be free from the love of money?

**A.** A believer can be free from the love of money because God has said he will never leave nor forsake him. [13:5]

---

**Q?** Who's faith should believers imitate?

**A.** Believers should imitate the faith of those who have led them and who have spoken God's word to them. [13:7]

---

**Q?** About what kind of strange teachings does the author warn the believers?

**A.** The author warns the believers about strange teachings involving rules about food. [13:9]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where were the bodies of the animals used for sacrifice in the holy place burned?

**A.** The bodies of the animals were burned outside the camp. [13:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did Jesus suffer?

**A.** Jesus suffered outside the city gate. [13:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where must believers go, and why?

**A.** Believers must go to Jesus outside the camp, bearing his disgrace. [13:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What permanent city do believers have here on earth?

**A.** Believers have no permanent city here on earth. [13:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What city do believers seek instead?

**A.** Believers seek the city that is to come instead. [13:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What sacrifice should believers constantly offer up to God?

**A.** Believers should constantly offer up sacrifices of praise to God. [13:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What attitude should believers have toward their leaders?

**A.** Believers should obey and submit to their leaders. [13:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What does God work in the believer?

**A.** God works in the believer that which is well pleasing in God's sight. [13:21]

---

**Q?** With whom will the author come when he visits the believers?

**A.** The author will come with Timothy when he visits the believers. [13:23]

---

## translationWords

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest, priesthood** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest, priesthood, Moses, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-15]** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **[10-05]** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **[13-09]** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **[13-11]** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **[14-07]** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Abel

### Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [Cain](#), [Eve](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

## **acknowledge**

### **Facts:**

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as, “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as, “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [salvation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-06]**”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **[28-02]** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **[34-07]**”The religious leader prayed like this, ”Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””

## **adversary, enemy**

### **Definition:**

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**age****Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include, “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as, “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase, “at a very old age” could be translated as, “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase, “this present evil age” means, “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## altar of incense

### Facts:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as “altar for burning incense” or, “golden altar” or, “incense burner” or, “incense table,”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [incense](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- 

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## anoint, anointed

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

## **appoint, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## assembly, assemble

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **astray, go astray, led astray, stray**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## atonement lid

### Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to do this, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [cherubim](#), [cherub](#), [propitiation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## avenge, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **awe, awesome**

### **Definition:**

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## baptize, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being “baptized with the Holy Spirit” and “baptized with fire.”
- The term “baptism” is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash,” or “spiritually cleanse.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as, “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing,” or “a spiritual washing.”
- When it refers to suffering, “baptism” could also be translated as “a time of terrible suffering” or “a cleansing through severe suffering.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-03] When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- [24-07] John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- [42-10] So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- [43-12] About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- [45-11] As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- [46-05] Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- [49-14] Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

## **barren**

### **Definition:**

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **beg, beggar**

### **Definition:**

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

## believe, believe in, belief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

## believer

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- [47-14] They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## **beloved**

### **Definition:**

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **biblical time: day**

### **Definition:**

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **biblical time: month**

### **Definition:**

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **biblical time: year**

### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **birthright**

### **Definition:**

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**blameless****Definition:**

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## blemish

### Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: , [believer](#), [clean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

*from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.*

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## **bloodshed**

### **Definition:**

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- “the bloodshed” could be translated as, “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as, “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you” could be translated as, “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**bind, bond, bound****Definition:**

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translate as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **burnt offering, offering by fire**

### **Definition:**

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Cain

### Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy, because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice, but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abel](#), [Adam](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## cherubim, cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#), other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## clean, cleanse

### Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## command, to command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **companion**

### **Facts:**

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**compassion, compassionate****Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **conceive, conception**

### **Definition:**

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [womb](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**condemn, condemnation****Definition:**

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **confess, confession**

### **Definition:**

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

## **confirm, confirmation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **conscience**

### **Definition:**

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## consume

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**courage, courageous****Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [confident](#), [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## covenant

### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

## **cow, calf, bull, cattle**

### **Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## create, creation, Creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

## CROSS

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[40-01]** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **[40-02]** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **[40-05]** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **[49-10]** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **[49-12]** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

## **crown, to crown**

### **Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## crucify

### Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [39-11] But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- [39-12] Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- [40-01] After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- [40-04] Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- [43-06] ”Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- [43-09] ”You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, ”This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

## curse, cursed

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

## curtain

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection, is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include, “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [biblical time: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **death, die, dead**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### **1. Physical death**

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### **2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

## descendant, descended from

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

## **desert, wilderness**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## destiny, destine, destined

### Definition:

The term “destiny” refers to what will happen to people in the future. If someone is “destined” to do something, it means that what that person will do in the future has been decided by God.

- When God “destines” a nation for wrath, this means that he has decided or chosen to punish that nation because of their sin.
- Judas was “destined” for destruction, which means that God had decided that Judas would be destroyed because of his rebellion.
- Every person has a final, eternal destiny, either in heaven or in hell.
- When the writer of Ecclesiastes says that everyone’s destiny is the same, he means that all people eventually die.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “destine you for wrath” could also be translated as, “decided that you will be punished” or “determined that you will experience my wrath.”
- The figurative expression, “they are destined for the sword” could be translated as, “God has decided that they will be destroyed by enemies who will kill them with swords” or “God has determined that their enemies will kill them with swords.”
- The phrase, “you are destined for,” could be translated using a phrase like, “God has decided that you will be.”
- Depending on the context, “destiny” could be translated as “final end” or “what will happen in the end” or “what God has decided will happen.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#).)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **destroyer**

### **Definition:**

The term “destroyer” literally means, “person who destroys.”

- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as, “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as, “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**discipline, self-discipline****Definition:**

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **disgrace, disgraceful**

### **Facts:**

The term “disgrace” refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term “disgraceful” is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

## divine

### Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include, “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include, “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [en:obe:kt:falsegod], [glory](#), [glorious](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## **encourage, encouragement**

### **Definition:**

The terms “encourage” and encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include, “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase, “give words of encouragement” means, “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **endure, endurance**

### **Definition:**

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Enoch

### Facts:

Enoch is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven without dying.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [Noah](#), [Seth](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Esau

### Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-07]** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **[07-02]** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **[07-04]** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **[07-05]** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **[07-10]** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

## everlasting, eternal, eternity

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## ancestor, father, forefather

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **footstool**

### **Definition:**

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **foreigner, foreign, alien**

### **Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **forgive, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

## sexual immorality

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**forsake, forsaken, forsook****Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **foundation, founded**

### **Definition:**

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## free, freedom, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **gate, gate bar**

### **Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## generation

UNDER REVIEW

### Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

### Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gideon

### Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man who God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [Midian](#), [Midianites](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-05]** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, “God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites.”
- **[16-06]** **Gideon’s** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **[16-08]** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **[16-08]** **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **[16-10]** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **[16-12]** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **[16-15]** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **[16-16]** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

**goat, kid****Definition:**

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## godly, godliness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “the godly” could be translated as, “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase, “in a godly manner” could be translated as, “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include, “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [to honor](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

**grace, gracious****Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## groan

### Definition:

The term “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. Usually a groan is made without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#), [cry out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## hand, right hand, to hand over

### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**hard, hardness, harden****Definition:**

The term “hard” has several different meanings depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions, “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as, “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include, “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as, “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as, “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as, “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby. See the link to “labor pains” below.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## heal, cure

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-14] One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- [21-10] He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- [26-06] Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- [26-08] They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- [32-14] She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- [44-03] Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- [49-02] ] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

## **heifer**

### **Definition:**

A heifer is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## heir

### Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belongs to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to Christians receiving spiritual benefits from God as their spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as, “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## high priest

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [13-08] No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- [21-07] The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- [38-03] The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- [39-01] The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- [39-03] Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- [44-07] The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- [45-02] So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- [46-01] The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## **holy, holiness**

### **Definition:**

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## holy place, most holy place

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord**

### **Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## **honor, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **household**

### **Definition:**

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

**imitate, imitator****Definition:**

The terms “imitate” and “imitator” refer to copying someone else, and acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “imitate” could be translated as, “do the same things as” or “follow his example.”
- The expression, “be imitators of God” could be translated as, “be people who act like God does” or “be people who do the kinds of things God does.”
- “You became imitators of us” could be translated as, “You followed our example” or “You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir****Definition:**

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
  - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
  - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
  - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

## **iniquity**

### **Definition:**

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **instruct, instruction**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## intercede, intercession

### Definition:

The terms “intercede” and “intercession” refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions “make intercession for” and “intercede for” mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “intercede” could include, “plead for” or “urge (someone) to do something (for someone else).”
- The noun “intercessions” could be translated as “appeals” or “requests” or “urgent prayers.”
- The phrase “make intercession for” could be translated as, “make requests for the benefit of” or “make an appeal on behalf of” or “ask God to help” or “appeal to God to bless” (someone).

(See also: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-04]** ”Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **[05-06]** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, ”Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **[06-05]** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[07-10]** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel," the "nation of Israel," or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah" and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as, "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-15] The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- [09-03] The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- [09-05] A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- [10-01] They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- [14-12] But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- [15-09] God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- [15-12] After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- [16-16] So God punished **Israel** again for worshipping idols.
- [43-06] "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

## Jephthah

### Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

- In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
- He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
- However, Jephthah made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in him sacrificing his daughter.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [Ephraim](#), [judge](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jericho

### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- Like all the Canaanites, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-05]** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- **[26-08]** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **[31-03]** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **[38-02]** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **[40-08]** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[42-11]** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

## Joshua

### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned different parts of the land for each of the tribes of Israel to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-04]** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **[14-08]** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **[14-14]** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **[14-15]** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## judge

### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **just, justice, justly**

### **Definition:**

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **lampstand**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## law, principle

### Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness” it means there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “lawless” could also be translated as, “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as, “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase, “man of lawlessness” could be translated as, “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [principle](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## **Levite, Levi**

### **Definition:**

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## like, likeness

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**lion****Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## **majesty**

### **Definition:**

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**manna****Definition:**

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

**Translation Suggestions**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [grain](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Sabbath](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **mediator**

### **Definition:**

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them and become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be, "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Melchizedek

### Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later, “Jerusalem”)

- Melchizedek’s name means, “king of righteousness” and his title “king of Salem” means “king of peace.”
- He was also called a “priest of God Most High.”
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly “order of Melchizedek.” Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek’s was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [high priest](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## mighty, might

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “minister” and “ministry” refer to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs. The term “minister” can also refer to a person who serves people in this way.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- In the New Testament, a “minister” of the gospel was someone who taught other people the message of salvation through faith in Jesus. Sometimes a minister is called a “servant.”
- The job of ministering to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, “to minister” could also be translated as “to serve” or “to care for” or “to meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as “to serve” or “to work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [service](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[16-08]** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **[19-14]** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **[37-10]** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **[43-06]** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **[49-02]** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**mock, ridicule, scoff at****Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

## Most High

### Facts:

The term, “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as, “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## new covenant

### Definition:

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” is explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and they begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, like it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Moses](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-05]** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **[21-14]** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”

- **[48-11]** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Noah

### Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic boat in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic boat, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the boat, Noah and his family were kept safe and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **[03-04]** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[03-13]** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

**oil****Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-14] God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- [38-01] Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- [38-04] Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- [48-09] When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- [48-10] Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

## **patient, patience**

### **Definition:**

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## people of God, my people

### Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**perfect****Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## perish, perishing, perishable

### Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## persecute, persecution

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **[46-02]** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **[46-04]** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]****Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]**”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

## **pierce**

### **Definition:**

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: [cross](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [Simeon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## possess, possession

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## praise

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## **priest, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## **prison, prisoner, imprison**

### **Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **proclaim, proclamation**

### **Definition:**

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## promise

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05]"This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07]"This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

## **prostitute, harlot, whore**

### **Definition:**

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## quench

### Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means to do something that prevents the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Rahab

### Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family were spared when Jericho was destroyed and they all came to live with the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [whore](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **[15-05]** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

## **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## rebel, rebellious, rebellion

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

## receive

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

## redeem, redemption, redeemer

### Definition:

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God did a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as, “Reed Sea.”

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), , [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-04]** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- **[12-05]** Then God told Moses, ”Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- **[13-01]** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

## reject

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

## rest

### Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **resurrection**

### **Definition:**

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “resurrection” could also be translated as, “coming back to life” or, “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

## reveal, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**reverence****Definition:**

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## reward

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

## right hand

### Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## rod

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## run, running

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” refers to moving very quickly on foot, usually at a much faster pace than walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands.
- “run after other gods” – means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- “I run to you to hide me” – means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

Other figurative meanings of “run”:

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.”
- The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated as “its border is next to” or “it borders.”
- Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.”
- The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, offering by fire, drink offering, false god, foreign god, god, goddess, fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, priest, priesthood, sin offering, worship)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## salvation

### Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Samson

### Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

- God gave Samson superhuman strength which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
- Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
- He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, which enabled the Philistines to capture him.
- While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [Philistines](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Samuel

### Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah was barren, so she prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if hborn as an answer to Hannah’s desperate prayer that God would give her a male child.er prayer was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- When Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to help Eli the priest in the temple to fulfill her promise to God
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet for him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **sanctify, sanctification**

### **Definition:**

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term, “to sanctify” can be translated as “to set apart” or “to make holy” or “to purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, it means that they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- With the meaning of “consecrate” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase, “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## sanctuary

### Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Sarah, Sarai

### Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-01]** "So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **[05-04]** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **[05-04]** "God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **[05-05]** "About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do."

**save, safe****Definition:**

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-08] Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- [11-02] God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- [12-05] Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- [12-13] The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- [16-17] This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- [44-08] “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## scepter

### Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority which symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God is described as having a scepter of righteousness. This is related to God ruling as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy refers to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as, “ruling rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [king](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**scroll****Definition:**

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. This would prevent anyone else from opening the scroll and writing on it.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [to seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## seed

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## seek, sought

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## seize

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## serve, service

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”<sup>1</sup>[comment\\_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## shadow

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## shame, shameful, ashamed

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
  - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## slaughter

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## son, son of

### Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Son of God, the Son, Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin “Son” will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God”, especially when in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [en:obe:kt:jesus]), [son](#), [son of](#), [sons of God](#)))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- [24-09] God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”?
- [31-08] The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- [37-05] Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”

- **[42-10]** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, ”Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

## Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title, “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” can be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It can also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addresses Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he says, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man,” this could be translated as, “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in, “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus is talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as, “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## soul

### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**staff****Definition:**

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, which was different from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**stone, stoning****Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **subject, be subject to, in subjection to**

### **Facts:**

The term “subject” refers to being under the authority of someone. The phrase “be subject to” is a command that means “obey” or “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit, in submission](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**submit, in submission****Definition:**

The term “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “submit” could also be translated as, “put under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as, “obedience” or “following the authority of.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as, “be in obedience to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase, “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#), [be subject to](#), [in subjection to](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **suffer, suffering**

### **Definition:**

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[09-13]** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **[38-12]** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **[42-03]** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **[42-07]** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **[46-04]** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tabernacle

### Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take apart the tabernacle and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when Solomon's temple in Jerusalem was built.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: , [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## teach, teaching, teacher, taught

### Definition:

The terms “teach” and “teaching” refer to telling other people information they didn’t know before. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [teacher](#), [Teacher](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **[28-01]** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **[37-02]** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **[38-14]** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **[49-03]** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- The term "tempt" is also used to refer to tempting God, which means to stubbornly keep disobeying him to the point that he must respond by punishing the disobedient ones. This is also called "testing" God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- In the context of tempting God, this could be translated as, "put God to the test" or "test God" or "try God's patience" or "cause God to have to punish" or "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [test](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-01] Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- [25-08] Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

## tent

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tenth, tithe

### Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions that is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believer](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [livestock](#), [Melchizedek](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**terror, terrify****Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## test

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## testimony, testify

### Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**thorn, thistle****Facts:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [to crown](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## throne

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [believer](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## trample

### Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be if people were running in a grassy field and smashing down the grass with their feet.
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term “trample” has a figurative meaning of punishing by humiliating, comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” is used figuratively to express how Yahweh will punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include, “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated nonfiguratively as, “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate” or “punish” or “conquer completely.”

(See also: [grape](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**tremble****Definition:**

The term “tremble” means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean “be very afraid.”
- Sometimes the word “tremble” refers to the ground shaking because of a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [earthly](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [Lord](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## tribe

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## **trumpet**

### **Definition:**

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **unbeliever, unbelief**

### **Definition:**

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include, “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believer](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness**

### **Definition:**

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **unholy**

### **Definition:**

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate this term could include, “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), , [honor](#), [to honor](#), [profane](#), [unclean](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## unjust, unjustly, injustice

### Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **unrighteous, unrighteousness**

### **Definition:**

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [unlawful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**voice****Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**watch, watchman****Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## water, waters

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **will of God**

### **Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

**word****Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**written****Definition:**

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

*This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain***. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham**. (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
  - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
  
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from another or they can give more information or a reminder about an item. Other languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing. When people who speak these languages hear a phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another.

### Description

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from other possible items, or they can give more information about an item. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know or assume.

- "Mary gave some of the food to *her sister who was very thankful*.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.
- "Mary gave some of the food to her sister, *who was very thankful*."
  - This same phrase can be used to inform us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing one item from another. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish one item from other possible items.

### Examples from the Bible

1. **Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:** These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate *the holy place* from *the most holy place*. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to *the woman who bore him*.  
(Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

**2. Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:** These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these. (See: [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#))

*for your righteous judgments* are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgement from his unrighteous judgement, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can *Sarah, who is ninety years old*, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, see [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for translation strategies.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

See [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for how to translate phrases that inform or remind.

## Double Negatives

*This answers the question: What are double negatives?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

### Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “*none*,” “*nothing*,” and “*no one*,” with adverbs like “*nowhere*,” and with prepositions like “*without*.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

### Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
  - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
    - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
  - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
    - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
  - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
    - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
  - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Verbs*

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Exclusive "We"

This answers the question: What is exclusive "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but *not you*." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we". Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*we* have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Inclusive “We”*

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## When Masculine Words Include Women

*This answers the question: How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*
- *Generic Noun Phrases*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men,” “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice  
but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

### Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, *he* must deny *himself*, take up *his* cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
  - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
  - "Wise *people* die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- **For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
  - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the singular pronouns “he” “himself” and “his” to plural pronouns “they” “themselves” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
  - "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

## Generic Noun Phrases

*This answers the question: What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things.

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

Different languages have different ways of showing that a phrase refers to something in general. Translators should use ways of doing this that are natural in their language.

### Description

Generic noun phrases refers to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?  
So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;  
the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.  
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
  - **Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
  - “Yahweh gives favor to *the good man*, but he condemns *the man who makes evil plans*.” (Proverbs 12:2)

**The following examples show how the strategies may be applied to a noun phrase that has “the” in it. Use the strategy that is most natural in your language:**

- **People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain*.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
    - “People curse *a man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
    - “People curse *any man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
    - “People curse *men* who refuse to sell them grain”
  5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
    - “People curse *whoever* refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *When Masculine Words Include Women*

## Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore.*** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops.*”

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

**Examples from the Bible**

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
 (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”**  
 (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Inclusive “We”

*This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, ”Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, ”Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk> ).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Exclusive “We”*

## Litotes

*This answers the question: What is litotes?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, he fell asleep, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

*To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:*

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Nominal Adjectives

*This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

*The rich man* had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

*He will not be rich*; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

...*the rich* must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.  
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
  - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
    - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
  - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
    - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
  - “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
  - “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Pronouns

*This answers the question: What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone.

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. There are six different types of pronouns.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give.

#### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Inclusive “We”
  - Exclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

**Relationship to other words in the sentence**

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

**Other Types of pronouns**

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

- **John saw *himself* in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house *that* John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man *who* built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen *this* here?**
- **Who is *that* over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to *anyone*.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know *who*.**

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

### Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation "I" to refer to John.

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," which is the past tense of "will."

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *"Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest..."*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."  
(Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *"The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *'Look here!'* or, *'Look there!'*

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He told him *"Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (*Hebrews 4:12* ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Forms of You

*This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Forms of ‘You’ - Singular*
- *Forms of ‘You’ - Dual/Plural*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of ‘You’ - Singular to a Crowd*

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

## Translating Son and Father

*This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### **“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

### **Translation Strategies**

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

## Biblical Money

*This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

### Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed *fifty denarii*.<sup>2</sup>" (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- <sup>[1]</sup> five hundred days's wages
- <sup>[2]</sup> fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
  - <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. ([Hebrews 7:1](#) ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. ([Hebrews 7:2](#) ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* ([Joshua 24:11](#) ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;”

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
  - "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
  - "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
  - "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
  - "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
  - "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Ordinal Numbers

*This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

### Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

## Symbolic Action

*This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

### Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
  - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
  - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

## Textual Variants

*This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup>The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>]

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>]

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

## Connecting Words

*This answers the question: What are connecting words for, and how do I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

**Connecting words** show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. They are also called **conjunctions**. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

### Description

Connecting words show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples of connecting words are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

- It was raining, *so* I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, *but* I did not have an umbrella. *So* I got very wet.

Sometimes people do not use a connecting word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context.

- It was raining. I didn't have an umbrella. I got very wet.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the meaning of a connecting word in the Bible and the relationship between the thoughts it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- Translators need to know how to help their readers understand the relationship between the thoughts.

### Translation Principles

- Translators need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

### Examples from the Bible

*And* when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. *And* she gave some also to her husband who was with her, *and* he ate it. (Genesis 3:6 ULB)

The word “and” can connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. The underlined examples above show where it connects clauses and sentences. In this verse, the event that follows “and” happened after the event before “and”.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, *but* instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. *Then* after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do with what he did do. Here the word “then” introduces something Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. *But* whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULB)

Here the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

### Translation Strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
  - **Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULB) - They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this with “so.”
    - “Jesus said to them, ”Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” So immediately they left the nets and went after him.”

2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

- **And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. And she gave some also to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.** (Genesis 3:6 ULB) - The word “and” here simply shows that something else happened. Some languages would not need to start the sentence with “and.”
  - “And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. She also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.” (Genesis 3:6 ULB)
- **I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.** (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB) Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here.
  - “I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

3. Use a different connecting word.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) - The word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages.
  - “Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.”
- **Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.** (Acts 21:34 ULB) - Instead of starting the first part of the sentence with “since”, some translators might prefer to start the second part of the sentence with “so”.
  - “The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, so he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.”

## Quotations and Quote Margins

*This answers the question: What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, who they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and who they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

### Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, who they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and who they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the quote. In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between to parts of the quote. The quote margins are underlined below.

- *She said*, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” *she said*
- “The food is ready,” *she said*. “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said”.

But his mother *answered* and *said*, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULB)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“\_”).

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said”.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Quote margin before the quote

*Zechariah said to the angel*, “How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old.” (Luke 1:18 ULB)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and *they said to him*, “Teacher, what must we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULB)

*He to them*, “Do not collect more money than you are supposed to.” (Luke 3:13 ULB)

### Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” *he said*. (Amos 7:3 ULB)

### Quote margin between two parts of the quote

“I will hide my face from them,” *he said*, “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULB)

“Therefore, those who can,” *he said*, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULB)

“For look, days are coming”—*this is Yahweh’s declaration*—“when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel” (Jeremiah 30:3 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.

- **“Therefore, those who can,” *he said*, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”** (Acts 25:5 ULB)
  - *He said* “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
  - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” *he said*.
  - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” *he said*. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

- **But his mother *answered and said*, “No, instead he will be called John.”** (Luke 1:60 ULB)
  - But his mother *replied*, “No, instead he will be called John.”
  - But his mother *said*, “No, instead he will be called John.”
  - But his mother *answered* like this. “No, instead he will be called John,” *she said*.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Direct and Indirect Quotations*